

The `fvextra` package

Geoffrey M. Poore
gpoore@gmail.com
github.com/gpoore/fvextra

v1.7.0 from 2024/05/16

Abstract

`fvextra` provides several extensions to `fancyvrb`, including automatic line breaking and improved math mode. `\Verb` is reimplemented so that it works (with a few limitations) inside other commands, even in movable arguments and PDF bookmarks. The new command `\EscVerb` is similar to `\Verb` except that it works everywhere without limitations by allowing the backslash to serve as an escape character. `fvextra` also patches some `fancyvrb` internals.

Contents

1	Introduction	5
2	Usage	5
2.1	Pandoc compatibility	5
3	General options	6
4	General commands	11
4.1	Inline-only settings with <code>\fvinline</code>	11
4.2	Custom formatting for inline commands like <code>\Verb</code> with <code>\FancyVerbFormatInline</code>	11
4.3	Custom formatting for environments like <code>Verbatim</code> with <code>\FancyVerbFormatLine</code> and <code>\FancyVerbFormatText</code>	11
5	Reimplemented commands	12
5.1	<code>\Verb</code>	13
5.2	<code>\SaveVerb</code>	14
5.3	<code>\UseVerb</code>	14
6	New commands and environments	14
6.1	<code>\EscVerb</code>	14
6.2	<code>VerbEnv</code>	15
6.3	<code>VerbatimWrite</code>	16
6.4	<code>VerbatimBuffer</code>	16
6.5	<code>\VerbatimInsertBuffer</code>	19
6.6	<code>\VerbatimClearBuffer</code>	20
7	Line breaking	20
7.1	Line breaking options	20
7.2	Line breaking and tab expansion	26
7.3	Advanced line breaking	27
7.3.1	A few notes on algorithms	27
7.3.2	Breaks within macro arguments	27
7.3.3	Customizing break behavior	29
8	Pygments support	29
8.1	Options for users	29
8.2	For package authors	30
9	Patches	30
9.1	Visible spaces	30
9.2	<code>obeytabs</code> with visible tabs and with tabs inside macro arguments	30
9.3	Math mode	31
9.3.1	Spaces	31
9.3.2	Symbols and fonts	32
9.4	Orphaned labels	32
9.5	<code>rulecolor</code> and <code>fillcolor</code>	32
9.6	Command lookahead tokenization	32

10 Additional modifications to fancyvrb	33
10.1 Backtick and single quotation mark	33
10.2 Line numbering	33
11 Undocumented features of fancyvrb	33
11.1 Undocumented options	33
11.2 Undocumented macros	33
12 Implementation	34
12.1 Required packages	34
12.2 Utility macros	34
12.2.1 fancyvrb space and tab tokens	34
12.2.2 ASCII processing	35
12.2.3 Sentinels	35
12.2.4 Active character definitions	36
12.3 pdfTeX with inputenc using UTF-8	37
12.4 Reading and processing command arguments	39
12.4.1 Tokenization and lookahead	39
12.4.2 Reading arguments	40
12.4.3 Reading and protecting arguments in expansion-only contexts	44
12.4.4 Converting detokenized tokens into PDF strings	47
12.4.5 Detokenizing verbatim arguments	48
12.4.6 Retokenizing detokenized arguments	65
12.5 Hooks	66
12.6 Escaped characters	67
12.7 Inline-only options	67
12.8 Reimplementations	68
12.8.1 extra option	68
12.8.2 \FancyVerbFormatInline	68
12.8.3 \Verb	68
12.8.4 \SaveVerb	70
12.8.5 \UseVerb	70
12.9 New commands and environments	72
12.9.1 \EscVerb	72
12.9.2 VerbEnv	73
12.9.3 VerbatimWrite	75
12.9.4 VerbatimBuffer	76
12.9.5 \VerbatimInsertBuffer	78
12.9.6 \VerbatimClearBuffer	79
12.10 Patches	80
12.10.1 Delimiting characters for verbatim commands	80
12.10.2 \CustomVerbatimCommand compatibility with \FVExtraRobustCommand	80
12.10.3 Visible spaces	81
12.10.4 obeytabs with visible tabs and with tabs inside macro arguments	81
12.10.5 Spacing in math mode	85
12.10.6 Fonts and symbols in math mode	85
12.10.7 Ophaned label	86
12.10.8 rulecolor and fillcolor	86

12.11	Extensions	87
12.11.1	New options requiring minimal implementation	87
12.11.2	Formatting with <code>\FancyVerbFormatLine</code> , <code>\FancyVerbFormatText</code> , and <code>\FancyVerbHighlightLine</code>	90
12.11.3	Line numbering	91
12.11.4	Line highlighting or emphasis	95
12.12	Line breaking	97
12.12.1	Options and associated macros	97
12.12.2	Line breaking implementation	105
12.13	Pygments compatibility	123

1 Introduction

The `fancyvrb` package had its first public release in January 1998. In July of the same year, a few additional features were added. Since then, the package has remained almost unchanged except for a few bug fixes. `fancyvrb` has become one of the primary \LaTeX packages for working with verbatim text.

Additional verbatim features would be nice, but since `fancyvrb` has remained almost unchanged for so long, a major upgrade could be problematic. There are likely many existing documents that tweak or patch `fancyvrb` internals in a way that relies on the existing implementation. At the same time, creating a completely new verbatim package would require a major time investment and duplicate much of `fancyvrb` that remains perfectly functional. Perhaps someday there will be an amazing new verbatim package. Until then, we have `fvextra`.

`fvextra` is an add-on package that gives `fancyvrb` several additional features, including automatic line breaking. Because `fvextra` patches and overwrites some of the `fancyvrb` internals, it may not be suitable for documents that rely on the details of the original `fancyvrb` implementation. `fvextra` tries to maintain the default `fancyvrb` behavior in most cases. All reimplementations (section 5), patches (section 9), and modifications to `fancyvrb` defaults (section 10) are documented. In most cases, there are options to switch back to original implementations or original default behavior.

Some features of `fvextra` were originally created as part of the `pythontex` and `minted` packages. `fancyvrb`-related patches and extensions that currently exist in those packages will gradually be migrated into `fvextra`.

2 Usage

`fvextra` may be used as a drop-in replacement for `fancyvrb`. It will load `fancyvrb` if it has not yet been loaded, and then proceeds to patch `fancyvrb` and define additional features.

The `upquote` package is loaded to give correct backticks (```) and typewriter single quotation marks (`'`). When this is not desirable within a given environment, use the option `curlyquotes`. `fvextra` modifies the behavior of these and other symbols in typeset math within verbatim, so that they will behave as expected (section 9.3). `fvextra` uses the `lineno` package for working with automatic line breaks. `lineno` gives a warning when the `csquotes` package is loaded before it, so `fvextra` should be loaded before `csquotes`. The `etoolbox` package is required. `color` or `xcolor` should be loaded manually to use color-dependent features.

While `fvextra` attempts to minimize changes to the `fancyvrb` internals, in some cases it completely overwrites `fancyvrb` macros with new definitions. New definitions typically follow the original definitions as much as possible, but code that depends on the details of the original `fancyvrb` implementation may be incompatible with `fvextra`.

2.1 Pandoc compatibility

`fvextra` supports line breaking in `Pandoc` \LaTeX output that includes highlighted source code. Enabling basic line breaking at spaces is as simple as adding

`\usepackage{fvextra}` and `\fvset{breaklines}` to the Pandoc Markdown `header-includes`.

By default, more advanced line breaking features such as `breakanywhere`, `breakbefore`, and `breakafter` will not work with Pandoc highlighted output, due to the presence of the syntax highlighting macros. This can be fixed by using `breaknonspaceingroup`, which enables all line breaking features within macros. For example, the following YAML metadata in a Markdown document would redefine the Pandoc `Highlighting` environment to enable line breaking anywhere.

```
---
header-includes:
- |
  ```{=latex}
 \usepackage{fvextra}
 \DefineVerbatimEnvironment{Highlighting}{Verbatim}{
 commandchars=\\\{\},
 breaklines, breaknonspaceingroup, breakanywhere}
  ```
---
```

3 General options

`fvextra` adds several general options to `fancyvrb`. All options related to automatic line breaking are described separately in section 7. All options related to syntax highlighting using Pygments are described in section 8.

beameroverlays (boolean) (default: `false`)
Give the `<` and `>` characters their normal text meanings, so that `beamer` overlays of the form `\only<1>{...}` will work. Note that something like `commandchars=\\\{\}` is required separately to enable macros. This is not incorporated in the `beameroverlays` option because essentially arbitrary command characters could be used; only the `<` and `>` characters are hard-coded for overlays.

With some font encodings and language settings, `beameroverlays` prevents literal (non-overlay) `<` and `>` characters from appearing correctly, so they must be inserted using commands.

curlyquotes (boolean) (default: `false`)
Unlike `fancyvrb`, `fvextra` requires the `upquote` package, so the backtick (```) and typewriter single quotation mark (`'`) always appear literally by default, instead of becoming the left and right curly single quotation marks (`‘` and `’`). This option allows these characters to be replaced by the curly quotation marks when that is desirable.

| | |
|--|--------------------------|
| <pre>\begin{Verbatim} `quoted text' \end{Verbatim}</pre> | <pre>`quoted text'</pre> |
|--|--------------------------|

| | |
|---|--------------------------|
| <pre>\begin{Verbatim}[curlyquotes] `quoted text' \end{Verbatim}</pre> | <pre>'quoted text'</pre> |
|---|--------------------------|

extra (boolean) (default: `true`)
 Use `fvextra` reimplementations of `fancyvrb` commands and environments when available. For example, use `fvextra`'s reimplemented `\Verb` that works (with a few limitations) inside other commands, rather than the original `fancyvrb` implementation that essentially functions as `\texttt` inside other commands.

fontencoding (string) (default: `<document font encoding>`)
 Set the font encoding inside `fancyvrb` commands and environments. Setting `fontencoding=none` resets to the default document font encoding.

highlightcolor (string) (default: `LightCyan`)
 Set the color used for `highlightlines`, using a predefined color name from `color` or `xcolor`, or a color defined via `\definecolor`.

highlightlines (string) (default: `<none>`)
 This highlights a single line or a range of lines based on line numbers. The line numbers refer to the line numbers that `fancyvrb` would show if `numbers=left`, etc. They do not refer to original or actual line numbers before adjustment by `firstnumber`.

The highlighting color can be customized with `highlightcolor`.

| |
|---|
| <pre>\begin{Verbatim}[numbers=left, highlightlines={1, 3-4}] First line Second line Third line Fourth line Fifth line \end{Verbatim}</pre> <hr style="border: 0.5px solid black; margin: 10px 0;"/> <pre>1 First line 2 Second line 3 Third line 4 Fourth line 5 Fifth line</pre> |
|---|

The actual highlighting is performed by a set of commands. These may be customized for additional fine-tuning of highlighting. See the default definition of `\FancyVerbHighlightLineFirst` as a starting point.

- `\FancyVerbHighlightLineFirst`: First line in a range.
- `\FancyVerbHighlightLineMiddle`: Inner lines in a range.
- `\FancyVerbHighlightLineLast`: Last line in a range.
- `\FancyVerbHighlightLineSingle`: Single highlighted lines.
- `\FancyVerbHighlightLineNormal`: Normal lines without highlighting.

If these are customized in such a way that indentation or inter-line spacing is changed, then `\FancyVerbHighlightLineNormal` may be modified as well to make all lines uniform. When working with the `First`, `Last`, and `Single` commands, keep in mind that `fvextra` merges all numbers ranges, so that `{1, 2-3, 3-5}` is treated the same as `{1-5}`.

Highlighting is applied after `\FancyVerbFormatText`, so any text formatting defined via that command will work with highlighting. Highlighting is applied before `\FancyVerbFormatLine`, so if `\FancyVerbFormatLine` puts a line in a box, the box will be behind whatever is created by highlighting. This prevents highlighting from vanishing due to user-defined customization.

`linenos` (boolean) (default: `false`)
`fancyvrb` allows line numbers via the options `numbers=<position>`. This is essentially an alias for `numbers=left`. It primarily exists for better compatibility with the `minted` package.

`mathescape` (boolean) (default: `false`)
This causes everything between dollar signs `$. . . $` to be typeset as math. The ampersand `&`, caret `^`, and underscore `_` have their normal math meanings.

This is equivalent to

```
codes={\catcode`\$=3\catcode`\&=4\catcode`\^=7\catcode`\_ =8}
```

`mathescape` is always applied *before* `codes`, so that `codes` can be used to override some of these definitions.

Note that `fvextra` provides several patches that make math mode within verbatim as close to normal math mode as possible (section 9.3).

`numberfirstline` (boolean) (default: `false`)
When line numbering is used with `stepnumber` \neq 1, the first line may not always be numbered, depending on the line number of the first line. This causes the first line always to be numbered.

```
\begin{Verbatim}[numbers=left, stepnumber=2,
                  numberfirstline]
First line
Second line
Third line
Fourth line
\end{Verbatim}
```

```
1 First line
2 Second line
  Third line
4 Fourth line
```

`numbers` (none | left | right | both) (default: `none`)
`fvextra` adds the `both` option for line numbering.

| | |
|---|-----------------|
| <code>\begin{Verbatim}[numbers=both]</code> | |
| First line | 1 First line 1 |
| Second line | 2 Second line 2 |
| Third line | 3 Third line 3 |
| Fourth line | 4 Fourth line 4 |
| <code>\end{Verbatim}</code> | |

retokenize (boolean) (default: `false`)
 By default, `\UseVerb` inserts saved verbatim material with the catcodes (`commandchars`, `codes`, etc.) under which it was originally saved with `\SaveVerb`. When `retokenize` is used, the saved verbatim material is retokenized under the settings in place at `\UseVerb`.

This only applies to the reimplemented `\UseVerb`, when paired with the reimplemented `\SaveVerb`. It may be extended to environments (`\UseVerbatim`, etc.) in the future, if the relevant commands and environments are reimplemented.

space (macro) (default: `_`)
 Redefine the visible space character. Note that this is only used if `showspaces=true`. The color of the character may be set with `spacecolor`.

spacebreak (macro) (default: `\discretionary{}{}{}`)
 This determines the break that is inserted around spaces when `breaklines=true` and one or more of the following conditions applies: `breakcollapsespaces=false`, `showspaces=true`, or the space is affected by `breakbefore` or `breakafter`. If it is redefined, it should typically be similar to `\FancyVerbBreakAnywhereBreak`, `\FancyVerbBreakBeforeBreak`, and `\FancyVerbBreakAfterBreak` to obtain consistent breaks.

spacecolor (string) (default: `none`)
 Set the color of visible spaces. By default (`none`), they take the color of their surroundings.

```
\color{gray}
\begin{Verbatim}[showspaces, spacecolor=red]
One two three
\end{Verbatim}
```

```
One_._two_._three
```

stepnumberfromfirst (boolean) (default: `false`)
 By default, when line numbering is used with `stepnumber` \neq 1, only line numbers that are a multiple of `stepnumber` are included. This offsets the line numbering from the first line, so that the first line, and all lines separated from it by a multiple of `stepnumber`, are numbered.

```

\begin{Verbatim}[numbers=left, stepnumber=2,
                 stepnumberfromfirst]

First line
Second line
Third line
Fourth line
\end{Verbatim}

```

```

1 First line
   Second line
3 Third line
   Fourth line

```

`stepnumberoffsetvalues` (boolean) (default: `false`)

By default, when line numbering is used with `stepnumber` $\neq 1$, only line numbers that are a multiple of `stepnumber` are included. Using `firstnumber` to offset the numbering will change which lines are numbered and which line gets which number, but will not change which *numbers* appear. This option causes `firstnumber` to be ignored in determining which line numbers are a multiple of `stepnumber`. `firstnumber` is still used in calculating the actual numbers that appear. As a result, the line numbers that appear will be a multiple of `stepnumber`, plus `firstnumber` minus 1.

This option gives the original behavior of `fancyvrb` when `firstnumber` is used with `stepnumber` $\neq 1$ (section 10.2).

```

\begin{Verbatim}[numbers=left, stepnumber=2,
                 firstnumber=4, stepnumberoffsetvalues]

First line
Second line
Third line
Fourth line
\end{Verbatim}

```

```

   First line
5 Second line
   Third line
7 Fourth line

```

`tab` (macro) (default: `fancyvrb`'s `\FancyVerbTab`, ↯)

Redefine the visible tab character. Note that this is only used if `showtabs=true`. The color of the character may be set with `tabcolor`.

When redefining the tab, you should include the font family, font shape, and text color in the definition. Otherwise these may be inherited from the surrounding text. This is particularly important when using the tab with syntax highlighting, such as with the `minted` or `pythontex` packages.

`fancyvrb` defines `\FancyVerbFormatLine`, which can be used to apply custom formatting to each individual line of text in environments like `Verbatim`. By default, it takes a line as an argument and inserts it with no modification. This is equivalent to `\newcommand{\FancyVerbFormatLine}[1]{#1}`.¹

`fvextra` introduces line breaking, which complicates line formatting. We might want to apply formatting to the entire line, including line breaks, line continuation symbols, and all indentation, including any extra indentation provided by line breaking. Or we might want to apply formatting only to the actual text of the line. `fvextra` leaves `\FancyVerbFormatLine` as applying to the entire line, and introduces a new command `\FancyVerbFormatText` that only applies to the text part of the line.² By default, `\FancyVerbFormatText` inserts the text unmodified. When it is customized, it should not use boxes that do not allow line breaks to avoid conflicts with line breaking code.

```
\renewcommand{\FancyVerbFormatLine}[1]{%
  \fcolorbox{DarkBlue}{LightGray}{#1}}
\renewcommand{\FancyVerbFormatText}[1]{\textcolor{Green}{#1}}

\begin{Verbatim}[breaklines]
Some text that proceeds for a while and finally wraps onto another line
Some more text
\end{Verbatim}
```

```
Some text that proceeds for a while and finally wraps onto
↪ another line

Some more text
```

5 Reimplemented commands

`fvextra` reimplements parts of `fancyvrb`. These new implementations stay close to the original definitions while allowing for new features that otherwise would not be possible. Reimplemented versions are used by default. The original implementations may be used via `\fvset{extra=false}` or by using `extra=false` in the optional arguments to a command or environment.

Reimplemented commands restrict the scope of catcode-related options compared to the original `fancyvrb` versions. This prevents catcode-related options from interfering with new features such as `\FancyVerbFormatInline`. With `fvextra`, the `codes` option should only be used for catcode modifications. Including non-catcode commands in `codes` will typically have no effect, unlike with `fancyvrb`. If you want

¹The actual definition in `fancyvrb` is `\def\FancyVerbFormatLine#1{\FV@ObeyTabs{#1}}`. This is problematic because redefining the macro could easily eliminate `\FV@ObeyTabs`, which governs tab expansion. `fvextra` redefines the macro to `\def\FancyVerbFormatLine#1{#1}` and patches all parts of `fancyvrb` that use `\FancyVerbFormatLine` so that `\FV@ObeyTabs` is explicitly inserted at the appropriate points.

²When `breaklines=true`, each line is wrapped in a `\parbox`. `\FancyVerbFormatLine` is outside the `\parbox`, and `\FancyVerbFormatText` is inside.

to customize verbatim content using general commands, consider `formatcom`.

5.1 `\Verb`

`\Verb*[(options)](delim char or {)(text)(delim char or }`

The new `\Verb` works as expected (with a few limitations) inside other commands. It even works in movable arguments (for example, in `\section`), and is compatible with `hyperref` for generating PDF strings (for example, PDF bookmarks). The `fancyvrb` definition did work inside some other commands, but essentially functioned as `\texttt` in that context.

`\Verb` is compatible with `breaklines` and the relevant line-breaking options.

Like the original `fancyvrb` implementation, the new `\Verb` can be starred (`\Verb*`) and accepts optional arguments. While `fancyvrb`'s starred command `\Verb*` is a shortcut for `showspaces`, `fvextra`'s `\Verb*` is a shortcut for both `showspaces` and `showtabs`. This is more similar to the current behavior of \LaTeX 's `\verb*`, except that `\verb*` converts tabs into visible spaces instead of displaying them as visible tabs.

Delimiters A repeated character like normal `\verb`, or a pair of curly braces `{...}`. If curly braces are used, then `<text>` cannot contain unpaired curly braces. Note that curly braces should be preferred when using `\Verb` inside other commands, and curly braces are *required* when `\Verb` is in a movable argument, such as in a `\section`. Non-ASCII characters now work as delimiters under `pdfTeX` with `inputenc` using UTF-8.³ For example, `\Verb$verbs$` now works as expected.

Limitations inside other commands While the new `\Verb` does work inside arbitrary other commands, there are a few limitations.

- `#` and `%` cannot be used. If you need them, consider `\EscVerb` or perhaps `\SaveVerb` plus `\UseVerb`.
- Curly braces are only allowed in pairs.
- Multiple adjacent spaces will be collapsed into a single space.
- Be careful with backslashes. A backslash that is followed by one or more ASCII letters will cause a following space to be lost, if the space is not immediately followed by an ASCII letter. For example, `\Verb{\r \n}` becomes `\r\n`, but `\Verb{\r n}` becomes `\r n`. Basically, anything that looks like a \LaTeX command (control word) will gobble following spaces, unless the next character after the spaces is an ASCII letter.
- A single `^` is fine, but avoid `^^` because it will serve as an escape sequence for an ASCII command character.

Using in movable arguments `\Verb` works automatically in movable arguments, such as in a `\section`. `\protect` or similar measures are not needed for `\Verb` itself, or for any of its arguments, and should not be used. `\Verb` performs operations that amount to applying `\protect` to all of these automatically.

³Under `pdfTeX`, non-ASCII code points are processed at the byte rather than code point level, so `\Verb` must treat a sequence of multiple bytes as the delimiter.

hyperref PDF strings `\Verb` is compatible with `hyperref` for generating PDF strings such as PDF bookmarks. Note that the PDF strings are *always* a literal rendering of the verbatim text, with all `fancyvrb` options ignored. For example, things like `showspaces` and `commandchars` have no effect. If you need options to be applied to obtain desired PDF strings, consider a custom approach, perhaps using `\texorpdfstring`.

Line breaking `breaklines` allows breaks at spaces. `breakbefore`, `breakafter`, and `breakanywhere` function as expected, as do things like `breakaftersymbolpre` and `breakaftersymbolpost`. Break options that are only applicable to block text like a `Verbatim` environment do not have any effect. For example, `breakindent` and `breaksymbol` do nothing.

5.2 `\SaveVerb`

```
\SaveVerb[options]{name}delim char or {textdelim char or }
```

`\SaveVerb` is reimplemented so that it is equivalent to the reimplemented `\Verb`. Like the new `\Verb`, it accepts *text* delimited by a pair of curly braces `{...}`. It supports `\fvlineset`. It also adds support for the new `retokenize` option for `\UseVerb`.

5.3 `\UseVerb`

```
\UseVerb*[options]{name}
```

`\UseVerb` is reimplemented so that it is equivalent to the reimplemented `\Verb`. It supports `\fvlineset` and `breaklines`.

Like `\Verb`, `\UseVerb` is compatible with `hyperref` for generating PDF strings such as PDF bookmarks. Note that the PDF strings are *always* a literal rendering of the verbatim text, with all `fancyvrb` options ignored. For example, things like `showspaces` and `commandchars` have no effect. The new option `retokenize` also has no effect. If you need options to be applied to obtain desired PDF strings, consider a custom approach, perhaps using `\texorpdfstring`.

There is a new option `retokenize` for `\UseVerb`. By default, `\UseVerb` inserts saved verbatim material with the catcodes (`commandchars`, `codes`, etc.) under which it was originally saved with `\SaveVerb`. When `retokenize` is used, the saved verbatim material is retokenized under the settings in place at `\UseVerb`.

For example, consider `\SaveVerb{save}{\textcolor{red}{\#%}}`:

- `\UseVerb{save} ⇒ \textcolor{red}{\#%}`
- `\UseVerb[commandchars=\\{\}]{save} ⇒ \textcolor{red}{\#%}`
- `\UseVerb[retokenize, commandchars=\\{\}]{save} ⇒ \#%`

6 New commands and environments

6.1 `\EscVerb`

```
\EscVerb*[options]{backslash-escaped text}
```

This is like `\Verb` but with backslash escapes to allow for characters such as `#` and `%`. For example, `\EscVerb{\Verb{\#\%}}` gives `\Verb{\#\%}`. It behaves

exactly the same regardless of whether it is used inside another command. Like the reimplemented `\Verb`, it works in movable arguments (for example, in `\section`), and is compatible with `hyperref` for generating PDF strings (for example, PDF bookmarks).

Delimiters Text must *always* be delimited with a pair of curly braces `{...}`. This ensures that `\EscVerb` is always used in the same manner regardless of whether it is inside another command.

Escaping rules

- Only printable, non-alphanumeric ASCII characters (symbols, punctuation) can be escaped with backslashes.⁴
- Always escape these characters: `\`, `%`, `#`.
- Escape spaces when there are more than one in a row.
- Escape `^` if there are more than one in a row.
- Escape unpaired curly braces.
- Additional symbols or punctuation characters may require escaping if they are made `\active`, depending on their definitions.

Using in movable arguments `\EscVerb` works automatically in movable arguments, such as in a `\section`. `\protect` or similar measures are not needed for `\EscVerb` itself, or for any of its arguments, and should not be used. `\EscVerb` performs operations that amount to applying `\protect` to all of these automatically.

hyperref PDF strings `\EscVerb` is compatible with `hyperref` for generating PDF strings such as PDF bookmarks. Note that the PDF strings are *always* a literal rendering of the verbatim text after backslash escapes have been applied, with all `fancyvrb` options ignored. For example, things like `showspaces` and `commandchars` have no effect. If you need options to be applied to obtain desired PDF strings, consider a custom approach, perhaps using `\texorpdfstring`.

6.2 VerbEnv

`\begin{VerbEnv}[options]`
single line
`\end{VerbEnv}` This is an environment variant of `\Verb`. The environment must contain only a single line of text, and the closing `\end{VerbEnv}` must be on a line by itself. The *options* and *single line* are read and then passed on to `\Verb` internally for actual typesetting.

While `VerbEnv` can be used by document authors, it is primarily intended for package creators. For example, it is used in `minted` to implement `\mintinline`. In that case, highlighted code is always generated within a `Verbatim` environment. It is possible to process this as inline rather than block verbatim by `\letting \Verbatim to \VerbEnv`.

⁴Allowing backslash escapes of letters would lead to ambiguity regarding spaces; see `\Verb`.

| | |
|---|---------------------|
| BEFORE\begin{VerbEnv}
inline
\end{VerbEnv}
AFTER | BEFORE_inline_AFTER |
|---|---------------------|

`VerbEnv` is not implemented using the typical `fancyvrb` environment implementation style, so it is not compatible with `\RecustomVerbatimEnvironment`.

6.3 VerbatimWrite

`\begin{VerbatimWrite}[(opt)]`
`<lines>` This writes environment contents verbatim to an external file. It is similar to `fancyvrb`'s `VerbatimOut`, except that (1) it allows writing to a file multiple times (multiple environments can write to the same file) and (2) by default it uses `\detokenize` to guarantee truly verbatim output.

By default, all `fancyvrb` options except for `VerbatimWrite`-specific options are ignored. This can be customized on a per-environment basis via environment optional arguments.

Options defined specifically for `VerbatimWrite`:

`writefilehandle` (file handle) (default: *none*)
File handle for writing. For example,

```
\newwrite\myfile
\immediate\openout\myfile=myfile.txt\relax

\begin{VerbatimWrite}[writefilehandle=\myfile]
...
\end{VerbatimWrite}

\immediate\closeout\myfile
```

`writer` (macro) (default: `\FancyVerbDefaultWriter`)
This is the macro that processes each line of text in the environment and then writes it to file. This is the default implementation:

```
\def\FancyVerbDefaultWriter#1{%
\immediate\write\FancyVerbWriteFileHandle{\detokenize{#1}}
```

6.4 VerbatimBuffer

`\begin{VerbatimBuffer}[(opt)]`
`<lines>` This environment stores its contents verbatim in a “buffer,” a sequence of numbered macros each of which contains one line of the environment. The “buffered” lines can then be looped over for further processing or later use. This is similar to `fancyvrb`'s `SaveVerbatim`, which saves an environment for later use. `VerbatimBuffer` offers additional flexibility by capturing truly verbatim environment contents using `\detokenize` and saving environment contents in a format designed for further processing.

By default, all `fancyvrb` options except for `VerbatimBuffer`-specific options are ignored. This can be customized on a per-environment basis via environment optional arguments.

Below is an extended example that demonstrates what is possible with `VerbatimBuffer` combined with `VerbatimInsertBuffer`. This uses `\ifdefstring` from the `etoolbox` package.

- `\setformatter` defines an empty `\formatter` macro. Then it loops over the lines in a buffer looking for a line containing only the text “red”. If this is found, it redefines `\formatter` to `\color{red}`. `FancyVerbBufferIndex` is a counter that is always available for buffer looping. `FancyVerbBufferLength` is the default counter containing the buffer length (number of lines). `\FancyVerbBufferLineName` contains the base name for buffer line macros (default `FancyVerbBufferLine`).
- `afterbuffer` involves two steps: (1) `\setformatter` loops through the buffer and defines `\formatter` based on the buffer contents, and (2) `VerbatimInsertBuffer` typesets the buffer, using `formatcom=\formatter` to format the text based on whether any line contains only the text “red”.

```

\def\setformatter{
  \def\formatter{}
  \setcounter{FancyVerbBufferIndex}{1}
  \loop\unless\ifnum\value{FancyVerbBufferIndex}>\value{FancyVerbBufferLength}\relax
    \expandafter\let\expandafter\bufferline
    \csname\FancyVerbBufferLineName\arabic{FancyVerbBufferIndex}\endcsname
    \ifdefstring{\bufferline}{red}{\def\formatter{\color{red}}}{\}
    \stepcounter{FancyVerbBufferIndex}
  \repeat}

\begin{VerbatimBuffer}[
  afterbuffer={\setformatter\VerbatimInsertBuffer[formatcom=\formatter]}
]
first
second
red
\end{VerbatimBuffer}

```

```

first
second
red

```

Here is the same example, but rewritten to use a global buffer with custom buffer names instead.

```

\begin{VerbatimBuffer}[globalbuffer, bufferlinename=exbuff, bufferlengthname=exbuff]
first
second
red
\end{VerbatimBuffer}

\def\formatter{}
\setcounter{FancyVerbBufferIndex}{1}
\loop\unless\ifnum\value{FancyVerbBufferIndex}>\value{exbuff}\relax
  \expandafter\let\expandafter\bufferline
  \csname exbuff\arabic{FancyVerbBufferIndex}\endcsname
  \ifdefstring{\bufferline}{red}{\def\formatter{\color{red}}}{\}
  \stepcounter{FancyVerbBufferIndex}
\repeat

\VerbatimInsertBuffer[
  formatcom=\formatter,
  bufferlinename=exbuff,
  bufferlengthname=exbuff
]

-----
first
second
red

```

Options defined specifically for `VerbatimBuffer`:

`afterbuffer` (macro) (default: *none*)
 Macro or macros invoked at the end of the environment, after all lines of the environment have been buffered. This is outside the `\begingroup... \endgroup` that wraps verbatim processing, so `fancyvrb` settings are no longer active. However, the buffer line macros and the buffer length counter are still accessible.

`bufferer` (macro) (default: `\FancyVerbDefaultBufferer`)
 This is the macro that adds lines to the buffer. The default is designed to create a truly verbatim buffer via `\detokenize`. This can be customized if you wish to use `fancyvrb` options related to catcodes to create a buffer that is only partially verbatim (that contains macros).

```

\def\FancyVerbDefaultBufferer#1{%
  \expandafter\xdef\csname\FancyVerbBufferLineName\arabic{FancyVerbBufferIndex}\endcsname{%
    \detokenize{#1}}
}

```

A custom `bufferer` must take a single argument `#1` (a line of the environment text) and ultimately store the processed line in a macro called

```

\csname\FancyVerbBufferLineName\arabic{FancyVerbBufferIndex}\endcsname

```

This macro must be defined globally, so `\xdef` or `\gdef` is necessary (this does not interfere with scoping from `globalbuffer`). Otherwise, there are no restrictions. The `\xdef` and `\detokenize` in the default definition guarantee that the buffer

consists only of the literal text from the environment, but this is not required for a custom `bufferer`.

`bufferlengthname` (string) (default: `FancyVerbBufferLength`)
Name of the counter (`\newcounter`) storing the length of the buffer. This is the number of lines stored.

`bufferlinename` (string) (default: `FancyVerbBufferLine`)
The base name of the buffer line macros. The default is `FancyVerbBufferLine`, which will result in buffer macros `\FancyVerbBufferLine<n>` with integer `n` greater than or equal to one and less than or equal to the number of lines (one-based indexing). Since buffer macro names contain a number, they must be accessed differently than typical macros:

```
\csname FancyVerbBufferLine<n>\endcsname  
\@nameuse{FancyVerbBufferLine<n>}
```

Typically the buffer macros will be looped over with a counter that is incremented, in which case `<n>` should be the counter value `\arabic{<counter>}`.

`buffername` (string) (default: `none`)
Shortcut for setting `bufferlengthname` and `bufferlinename` simultaneously, using the same root name. This sets `bufferlengthname` to `<buffername>length` and `bufferlinename` to `<buffername>line`.

`globalbuffer` (bool) (default: `false`)
This determines whether buffer line macros are defined globally, that is, whether they are accessible after the end of the `VerbatimBuffer` environment. If the line macros are defined globally, then the buffer length counter is also increased appropriately outside the environment. `globalbuffer` does not affect any `afterbuffer` macro, since that is invoked inside the environment.

When buffered lines are used immediately, consider using `afterbuffer` instead of `globalbuffer`. When buffered lines must be used later in a document, consider using `globalbuffer` with custom (and perhaps unique) `bufferlinename` and `bufferlengthname`.

When `globalbuffer=true`, `VerbatimBuffer` environments with the same buffer name will append to a single buffer, so that it ultimately contains the concatenated contents of all environments. A `VerbatimBuffer` environment with `globalbuffer=false` will append to the buffer created by any previous `VerbatimBuffer` that had `globalbuffer=true` and shared the same buffer name. Any `afterbuffer` macro will have access to a buffer containing the concatenated data. At the very end of the environment with `globalbuffer=false`, after any `afterbuffer`, this appended content will be removed. All buffer line macros (from `bufferlinename`) that were created by that environment are “deleted” (`\let` to an undefined macro), and the buffer length counter (from `bufferlengthname`) is reduced proportionally.

6.5 `\VerbatimInsertBuffer`

`\VerbatimInsertBuffer[options]`

This inserts an existing buffer created by `VerbatimBuffer` as a `Verbatim` environment. It customizes `Verbatim` internals to function with a buffer in a

command context. See the `VerbatimBuffer` documentation for an example of usage.

Options related to catcodes cause the buffer to be retokenized during typesetting. That is, the `fancyvrb` options used for `\VerbatimInsertBuffer` are not restricted by those that were in effect when `VerbatimBuffer` originally created the buffer, so long as the buffer contains a complete representation of the original `VerbatimBuffer` environment contents.

`\VerbatimInsertBuffer` is not implemented using the typical `fancyvrb` command and environment implementation styles, so it is not compatible with `\RecustomVerbatimCommand` or `\RecustomVerbatimEnvironment`.

6.6 `\VerbatimClearBuffer`

`\VerbatimClearBuffer` [*options*]

Clear an existing buffer created with `VerbatimBuffer`. `\global\let` all buffer line macros to an undefined macro and set the buffer length counter to zero.

7 Line breaking

Automatic line breaking may be turned on with `breaklines=true`. By default, breaks only occur at spaces. Breaks may be allowed anywhere with `breakanywhere`, or only before or after specified characters with `breakbefore` and `breakafter`. Many options are provided for customizing breaks. A good place to start is the description of `breaklines`.

When a line is broken, the result must fit on a single page. There is no support for breaking a line across multiple pages.

7.1 Line breaking options

Options are provided for customizing typical line breaking features. See section 7.3 for details about low-level customization of break behavior.

`breakafter` (string) (default: *none*)

Break lines after specified characters, not just at spaces, when `breaklines=true`. For example, `breakafter=-/` would allow breaks after any hyphens or slashes. Special characters given to `breakafter` should be backslash-escaped (usually `#`, `{`, `}`, `%`, `[`, `]`, and the comma `,`; the backslash `\` may be obtained via `\\` and the space via `\space`).⁵

For an alternative, see `breakbefore`. When `breakbefore` and `breakafter` are used for the same character, `breakbeforeinrun` and `breakafterinrun` must both have the same setting.

Note that when `commandchars` or `codes` are used to include macros within verbatim content, breaks will not occur within mandatory macro arguments by default. Depending on settings, macros that take optional arguments may not work unless the entire macro including arguments is wrapped in a group (curly

⁵`breakafter` expands each token it is given once, so when it is given a macro like `\%`, the macro should expand to a literal character that will appear in the text to be typeset. `fvextra` defines special character escapes that are activated for `breakafter` so that this will work with common escapes. The only exception to token expansion is non-ASCII characters under pdfTeX; these should appear literally. `breakafter` is not catcode-sensitive.

braces `{}`, or other characters specified with `commandchars`). See section 7.3 for details, and consider `breaknonspaceingroup` as a solution in simple cases.

```
\begin{Verbatim}[breaklines, breakafter=d]
some_string = 'SomeTextThatGoesOnAndOnForSoLongThatItCouldNeverFitOnOneLine'
\end{Verbatim}

some_string = 'SomeTextThatGoesOnAndOnForSoLongThatItCould
↪ NeverFitOnOneLine'
```

breakafterinrun (boolean) (default: `false`)
 When `breakafter` is used, insert breaks within runs of identical characters. If `false`, treat sequences of identical characters as a unit that cannot contain breaks. When `breakbefore` and `breakafter` are used for the same character, `breakbeforeinrun` and `breakafterinrun` must both have the same setting.

breakaftersymbolpre (string) (default: `\,\footnotesize\ensuremath{_}\rfloor`, `_j`)
 The symbol inserted pre-break for breaks inserted by `breakafter`. This does not apply to breaks inserted next to spaces; see `spacebreak`.

breakaftersymbolpost (string) (default: `<none>`)
 The symbol inserted post-break for breaks inserted by `breakafter`. This does not apply to breaks inserted next to spaces; see `spacebreak`.

breakanywhere (boolean) (default: `false`)
 Break lines anywhere, not just at spaces, when `breaklines=true`.

Note that when `commandchars` or `codes` are used to include macros within verbatim content, breaks will not occur within mandatory macro arguments by default. Depending on settings, macros that take optional arguments may not work unless the entire macro including arguments is wrapped in a group (curly braces `{}`, or other characters specified with `commandchars`). See section 7.3 for details, and consider `breaknonspaceingroup` as a solution in simple cases.

```
\begin{Verbatim}[breaklines, breakanywhere]
some_string = 'SomeTextThatGoesOnAndOnForSoLongThatItCouldNeverFitOnOneLine'
\end{Verbatim}

some_string = 'SomeTextThatGoesOnAndOnForSoLongThatItCouldNeve
↪ rFitOnOneLine'
```

breakanywheresymbolpre (string) (default: `\,\footnotesize\ensuremath{_}\rfloor`, `_j`)
 The symbol inserted pre-break for breaks inserted by `breakanywhere`. This does not apply to breaks inserted next to spaces; see `spacebreak`.

breakanywheresymbolpost (string) (default: `<none>`)
 The symbol inserted post-break for breaks inserted by `breakanywhere`. This does

not apply to breaks inserted next to spaces; see `spacebreak`.

`breakautoindent` (boolean) (default: `true`)
When a line is broken, automatically indent the continuation lines to the indentation level of the first line. When `breakautoindent` and `breakindent` are used together, the indentations add. This indentation is combined with `breaksymbolindentleft` to give the total actual left indentation.

`breakbefore` (string) (default: `none`)
Break lines before specified characters, not just at spaces, when `breaklines=true`. For example, `breakbefore=A` would allow breaks before capital A's. Special characters given to `breakbefore` should be backslash-escaped (usually `#`, `{`, `}`, `%`, `[`, `]`, and the comma `,`; the backslash `\` may be obtained via `\\` and the space via `\space`).⁶

For an alternative, see `breakafter`. When `breakbefore` and `breakafter` are used for the same character, `breakbeforeinrun` and `breakafterinrun` must both have the same setting.

Note that when `commandchars` or `codes` are used to include macros within verbatim content, breaks will not occur within mandatory macro arguments by default. Depending on settings, macros that take optional arguments may not work unless the entire macro including arguments is wrapped in a group (curly braces `{}`, or other characters specified with `commandchars`). See section 7.3 for details, and consider `breaknonspacinggroup` as a solution in simple cases.

```
\begin{Verbatim}[breaklines, breakbefore=A]
some_string = 'SomeTextThatGoesOnAndOnForSoLongThatItCouldNeverFitOnOneLine'
\end{Verbatim}

_____

some_string = 'SomeTextThatGoesOn
↪ AndOnForSoLongThatItCouldNeverFitOnOneLine'
```

`breakbeforeinrun` (boolean) (default: `false`)
When `breakbefore` is used, insert breaks within runs of identical characters. If `false`, treat sequences of identical characters as a unit that cannot contain breaks. When `breakbefore` and `breakafter` are used for the same character, `breakbeforeinrun` and `breakafterinrun` must both have the same setting.

`breakbeforesymbolpre` (string) (default: `\,\footnotesize\ensuremath[_\rfloor]`, `_`)
The symbol inserted pre-break for breaks inserted by `breakbefore`. This does not apply to breaks inserted next to spaces; see `spacebreak`.

`breakbeforesymbolpost` (string) (default: `none`)
The symbol inserted post-break for breaks inserted by `breakbefore`. This does not apply to breaks inserted next to spaces; see `spacebreak`.

⁶`breakbefore` expands each token it is given once, so when it is given a macro like `\%`, the macro should expand to a literal character that will appear in the text to be typeset. `fvextra` defines special character escapes that are activated for `breakbefore` so that this will work with common escapes. The only exception to token expansion is non-ASCII characters under pdfTeX; these should appear literally. `breakbefore` is not catcode-sensitive.

- breakcollapsespaces** (bool) (default: `true`)
 When `true` (default), a line break within a run of regular spaces (`showspaces=false`) replaces all spaces with a single break, and the wrapped line after the break starts with a non-space character. When `false`, a line break within a run of regular spaces preserves all spaces, and the wrapped line after the break may start with one or more spaces. This causes regular spaces to behave exactly like the visible spaces produced with `showspaces`; both give identical line breaks, with the only difference being the appearance of spaces.
- breakindent** (dimension) (default: `<breakindentnchars>`)
 When a line is broken, indent the continuation lines by this amount. When `breakautoindent` and `breakindent` are used together, the indentations add. This indentation is combined with `breaksymbolindentleft` to give the total actual left indentation.
- breakindentnchars** (integer) (default: `0`)
 This allows `breakindent` to be specified as an integer number of characters rather than as a dimension (assumes a fixed-width font).
- breaklines** (boolean) (default: `false`)
 Automatically break long lines. When a line is broken, the result must fit on a single page. There is no support for breaking a line across multiple pages.⁷
 By default, automatic breaks occur at spaces (even when `showspaces=true`). Use `breakanywhere` to enable breaking anywhere; use `breakbefore` and `breakafter` for more fine-tuned breaking.

| | |
|--|--|
| <pre>...text. \begin{Verbatim}[breaklines] def f(x): return 'Some text ' + str(x) \end{Verbatim}</pre> | <pre>...text. def f(x): return 'Some text ' + ↪ str(x)</pre> |
|--|--|

To customize the indentation of broken lines, see `breakindent` and `breakautoindent`. To customize the line continuation symbols, use `breaksymbolleft` and `breaksymbolright`. To customize the separation between the continuation symbols and the text, use `breaksymbolsepleft` and `breaksymbolsepright`. To customize the extra indentation that is supplied to make room for the break symbols, use `breaksymbolindentleft` and `breaksymbolindentright`. Since only the left-hand symbol is used by default, it may also be modified using the alias options `breaksymbol`, `breaksymbolsep`, and `breaksymbolindent`.

An example using these options to customize the `Verbatim` environment is shown below. This uses the `\carriagereturn` symbol from the `dingbat` package.

⁷Following the implementation in `fancyvrb`, each line is typeset within an `\hbox`, so page breaks are not possible.

```

\begin{Verbatim}[breaklines,
                 breakautoindent=false,
                 breaksymbolleft=\raisebox{0.8ex}{
                   \small\reflectbox{\carriagereturn}},
                 breaksymbolindentleft=0pt,
                 breaksymbolsepleft=0pt,
                 breaksymbolright=\small\carriagereturn,
                 breaksymbolindentright=0pt,
                 breaksymbolsepright=0pt]

def f(x):
    return 'Some text ' + str(x) + ' some more text ' +
           ↪ str(x) + ' even more text that goes on for a while'
\end{Verbatim}

```

```

def f(x):
    return 'Some text ' + str(x) + ' some more text ' +
    ↪ str(x) + ' even more text that goes on for a while'

```

Beginning in version 1.6, automatic line breaks work with `showspaces=true` by default. Defining `breakbefore` or `breakafter` for `\space` is no longer necessary. For example,

```

\begin{Verbatim}[breaklines, showspaces]
some_string = 'Some Text That Goes On And On For So Long That It Could Never Fit'
\end{Verbatim}

```

```

some_string = 'Some Text That Goes On And On For So Long That
↪ It Could Never Fit'

```

`breaknonspaceingroup` (boolean) (default: `false`)

By using `commandchars`, it is possible to include \LaTeX commands within otherwise verbatim text. In these cases, there can be groups (typically `{...}` but depends on `commandchars`) within verbatim. Spaces within groups are treated as potential line break locations when `breaklines=true`, but by default no other break locations are inserted (`breakbefore`, `breakafter`, `breakanywhere`). This is because inserting non-space break locations can interfere with command functionality. For example, in `\textcolor{red}{text}`, breaks shouldn't be inserted within `red`.

`breaknonspaceingroup` allows non-space breaks to be inserted within groups. This option should only be used when `commandchars` is including \LaTeX commands that do not take optional arguments and only take mandatory arguments that are typeset. Something like `\textit{text}` is fine, but `\textcolor{red}{text}` is not because one of the mandatory arguments is not typeset but rather provides a setting. For more complex commands, it is typically better to redefine them to insert breaks in appropriate locations using `\FancyVerbBreakStart... \FancyVerbBreakStop`.

`breaksymbol` (string) (default: `breaksymbolleft`)
Alias for `breaksymbolleft`.

`breaksymbolleft` (string) (default: `\tiny\ensuremath{\hookrightarrow}`, \rightarrow)
The symbol used at the beginning (left) of continuation lines when `breaklines=true`. To have no symbol, simply set `breaksymbolleft` to an empty string (“=,” or “={}”). The symbol is wrapped within curly braces {} when used, so there is no danger of formatting commands such as `\tiny` “escaping.”

The `\hookrightarrow` and `\hookleftarrow` may be further customized by the use of the `\rotatebox` command provided by `graphicx`. Additional arrow-type symbols that may be useful are available in the `dingbat` (`\carriagereturn`) and `mnsymbol` (hook and curve arrows) packages, among others.

`breaksymbolright` (string) (default: `\none`)
The symbol used at breaks (right) when `breaklines=true`. Does not appear at the end of the very last segment of a broken line.

`breaksymbolindent` (dimension) (default: `\breaksymbolindentleftnchars`)
Alias for `breaksymbolindentleft`.

`breaksymbolindentnchars` (integer) (default: `\breaksymbolindentleftnchars`)
Alias for `breaksymbolindentleftnchars`.

`breaksymbolindentleft` (dimension) (default: `\breaksymbolindentleftnchars`)
The extra left indentation that is provided to make room for `breaksymbolleft`. This indentation is only applied when there is a `breaksymbolleft`.

`breaksymbolindentleftnchars` (integer) (default: 4)
This allows `breaksymbolindentleft` to be specified as an integer number of characters rather than as a dimension (assumes a fixed-width font).

`breaksymbolindentright` (dimension) (default: `\breaksymbolindentrightnchars`)
The extra right indentation that is provided to make room for `breaksymbolright`. This indentation is only applied when there is a `breaksymbolright`.

`breaksymbolindentrightnchars` (integer) (default: 4)
This allows `breaksymbolindentright` to be specified as an integer number of characters rather than as a dimension (assumes a fixed-width font).

`breaksymbolsep` (dimension) (default: `\breaksymbolsepleftnchars`)
Alias for `breaksymbolsepleft`.

`breaksymbolsepnchars` (integer) (default: `\breaksymbolsepleftnchars`)
Alias for `breaksymbolsepleftnchars`.

`breaksymbolsepleft` (dimension) (default: `\breaksymbolsepleftnchars`)
The separation between the `breaksymbolleft` and the adjacent text.

`breaksymbolsepleftnchars` (integer) (default: 2)
Allows `breaksymbolsepleft` to be specified as an integer number of characters rather than as a dimension (assumes a fixed-width font).

`breaksymbolsepright` (dimension) (default: `\breaksymbolseprightnchars`)
The *minimum* separation between the `breaksymbolright` and the adjacent text. This is the separation between `breaksymbolright` and the furthest extent to which

adjacent text could reach. In practice, `\linewidth` will typically not be an exact integer multiple of the character width (assuming a fixed-width font), so the actual separation between the `breaksymbolright` and adjacent text will generally be larger than `breaksymbolsepright`. This ensures that break symbols have the same spacing from the margins on both left and right. If the same spacing from text is desired instead, `breaksymbolsepright` may be adjusted. (See the definition of `\FV@makeLineNumber` for implementation details.)

- `breaksymbolseprightnchars` (integer) (default: 2)
Allows `breaksymbolsepright` to be specified as an integer number of characters rather than as a dimension (assumes a fixed-width font).
- `spacebreak` (macro) (default: `\discretionary{}{}{}`)
This determines the break that is inserted around spaces when `breaklines=true` and one or more of the following conditions applies: `breakcollapsespaces=false`, `showspaces=true`, or the space is affected by `breakbefore` or `breakafter`. If it is redefined, it should typically be similar to `\FancyVerbBreakAnywhereBreak`, `\FancyVerbBreakBeforeBreak`, and `\FancyVerbBreakAfterBreak` to obtain consistent breaks.

7.2 Line breaking and tab expansion

`fancyvrb` provides an `obeytabs` option that expands tabs based on tab stops rather than replacing them with a fixed number of spaces (see `fancyvrb`'s `tabsize`). The `fancyvrb` implementation of tab expansion is not directly compatible with `fvextra`'s line-breaking algorithm, but `fvextra` builds on the `fancyvrb` approach to obtain identical results.

Tab expansion in the context of line breaking does bring some additional considerations that should be kept in mind. In each line, all tabs are expanded exactly as they would have been had the line not been broken. This means that after a line break, any tabs will not align with tab stops unless the total left indentation of continuation lines is a multiple of the tab stop width. The total indentation of continuation lines is the sum of `breakindent`, `breakautoindent`, and `breaksymbolindentleft` (alias `breaksymbolindent`).

A sample `Verbatim` environment that uses `obeytabs` with `breaklines` is shown below, with numbers beneath the environment indicating tab stops (`tabsize=8` by default). The tab stops in the wrapped and unwrapped lines are identical. However, the continuation line does not match up with the tab stops because by default the width of `breaksymbolindentleft` is equal to four monospace characters. (By default, `breakautoindent=true`, so the continuation line gets a tab plus `breaksymbolindentleft`.)

```

\begin{Verbatim}[obeytabs, showtabs, breaklines]
  ↗First ↗Second ↗Third ↗And more text that goes on for a
    ↪ while until wrapping is needed
  ↗First ↗Second ↗Third ↗Forth
\end{Verbatim}
1234567812345678123456781234567812345678123456781234567812345678

```

We can set the symbol indentation to eight characters by creating a dimen,

```
%\newdimen\temporarydimen
```

```
%
```

setting its width to eight characters,

```
%\settowidth{\temporarydimen}{\ttfamily AaAaAaAa}
```

```
%
```

and finally adding the option `breaksymbolindentleft=\temporarydimen` to the `Verbatim` environment to obtain the following:

```

    ↪First ↪Second ↪Third ↪And more text that goes on for a
        ↪ while until wrapping is needed
    ↪First ↪Second ↪Third ↪Forth
1234567812345678123456781234567812345678123456781234567812345678

```

7.3 Advanced line breaking

7.3.1 A few notes on algorithms

`breakanywhere`, `breakbefore`, and `breakafter` work by scanning through the tokens in each line and inserting line breaking commands wherever a break should be allowed. By default, they skip over all groups (`{...}`) and all math (`$. . . $`). Note that this refers to curly braces and dollar signs with their normal $\text{L}^{\text{A}}\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ meaning (catcodes), not verbatim curly braces and dollar signs; such non-verbatim content may be enabled with `commandchars` or `codes`. This means that math and macros that only take mandatory arguments (`{...}`) will function normally within otherwise verbatim text. However, macros that take optional arguments may not work because `[...]` is not treated specially, and thus break commands may be inserted within `[...]` depending on settings. Wrapping an entire macro, including its arguments, in a group will protect the optional argument: `{\langle macro \rangle [\langle oarg \rangle] {\langle marg \rangle}}`.

`breakbefore` and `breakafter` insert line breaking commands around specified characters. This process is catcode-independent; tokens are `\detokenized` before they are checked against characters specified via `breakbefore` and `breakafter`.

7.3.2 Breaks within macro arguments

```
\FancyVerbBreakStart
```

```
\FancyVerbBreakStop
```

When `commandchars` or `codes` are used to include macros within verbatim content, the options `breakanywhere`, `breakbefore`, and `breakafter` will not generate breaks within mandatory macro arguments. Macros with optional arguments may not work, depending on settings, unless they are wrapped in a group (curly braces `{}`, or other characters specified via `commandchars`).

If you want to allow breaks within macro arguments (optional or mandatory), then you should (re)define your macros so that the relevant arguments are wrapped in the commands

```
%\FancyVerbBreakStart ... \FancyVerbBreakStop
%
```

For example, suppose you have the macro

```
%\newcommand{\mycmd}[1]{\_before:#1:after\_}
%
```

Then you would discover that line breaking does not occur:

```
\begin{Verbatim}[commandchars=\\\{\}, breaklines, breakafter=a]
\mycmd{1}\mycmd{2}\mycmd{3}\mycmd{4}\mycmd{5}
\end{Verbatim}

_____

\_before:1:after\_before:2:after\_before:3:after\_before:4:after\_before:5:after\_
```

Now redefine the macro:

```
%\renewcommand{\mycmd}[1]{\_FancyVerbBreakStart\_before:#1:after\_\_FancyVerbBreakStop}
%
```

This is the result:

```
\begin{Verbatim}[commandchars=\\\{\}, breaklines, breakafter=a]
\mycmd{1}\mycmd{2}\mycmd{3}\mycmd{4}\mycmd{5}
\end{Verbatim}

_____

\_before:1:after\_before:2:after\_before:3:after\_before:4:a
↪ fter\_before:5:after\_
```

Instead of completely redefining macros, it may be more convenient to use `\let`. For example,

```
%\let\originalmycmd\mycmd
%\renewcommand{\mycmd}[1]{%
% \expandafter\FancyVerbBreakStart\originalmycmd{#1}\FancyVerbBreakStop}
%
```

Notice that in this case `\expandafter` is required, because `\FancyVerbBreakStart` does not perform any expansion and thus will skip over `\originalmycmd{#1}` unless it is already expanded. The `etoolbox` package provides commands that may be useful for patching macros to insert line breaks.

When working with `\FancyVerbBreakStart ... \FancyVerbBreakStop`, keep in mind that any groups `{...}` or math `...$` between the two commands will be skipped as far as line breaks are concerned, and breaks may be inserted within any optional arguments `[...]` depending on settings. Inserting breaks within groups requires another level of `\FancyVerbBreakStart` and `\FancyVerbBreakStop`, and protecting optional arguments requires wrapping the entire macro in a group `{...}`. Also, keep in mind that `\FancyVerbBreakStart` cannot introduce line breaks in a context in which they are never allowed, such as in an `\hbox`.

7.3.3 Customizing break behavior

`\FancyVerbBreakAnywhereBreak`

`\FancyVerbBreakBeforeBreak` These macros govern the behavior of breaks introduced by `breakanywhere`, `breakbefore`, and `breakafter`. These do not apply to breaks inserted next to spaces; see `spacebreak`.

`\FancyVerbBreakAfterBreak`

By default, these macros use `\discretionary`. `\discretionary` takes three arguments: commands to insert before the break, commands to insert after the break, and commands to insert if there is no break. For example, the default definition of `\FancyVerbBreakAnywhereBreak`:

```
%\newcommand{\FancyVerbBreakAnywhereBreak}{%  
% \discretionary{\FancyVerbBreakAnywhereSymbolPre}%  
% {\FancyVerbBreakAnywhereSymbolPost}{}}  
%
```

The other macros are equivalent, except that “Anywhere” is swapped for “Before” or “After”.

`\discretionary` will generally only insert breaks when breaking at spaces simply cannot make lines short enough (this may be tweaked to some extent with hyphenation settings). This can produce a somewhat ragged appearance in some cases. If you want breaks exactly at the margin (or as close as possible) regardless of whether a break at a space is an option, you may want to use `\allowbreak` instead. Another option is `\linebreak[$\langle n \rangle$]`, where $\langle n \rangle$ is between 0 to 4, with 0 allowing a break and 4 forcing a break.

8 Pygments support

8.1 Options for users

`fvextra` defines additional options for working code that has been highlighted with `Pygments`. These options work with the `minted` and `pythontex` packages, and may be enabled for other packages that work with `Pygments` output (section 8.2).

`breakbytoken` (boolean) (default: `false`)
When `breaklines=true`, do not allow breaks within `Pygments` tokens. This would prevent, for example, line breaking within strings.

`breakbytokenanywhere` (boolean) (default: `false`)
When `breaklines=true`, do not allow breaks within `Pygments` tokens, but always allow breaks between tokens even when they are immediately adjacent (not separated by spaces). **This option should be used with care.** Due to the details of how each `Pygments` lexer works, and due to the tokens defined in each lexer, this may result in breaks in locations that might not be anticipated. Also keep in mind that this will not allow breaks between tokens if those tokens are actually “subtokens” within another token.

`\FancyVerbBreakByTokenAnywhereBreak`

This defines the break inserted when `breakbytokenanywhere=true`. By default, it is `\allowbreak`.

8.2 For package authors

By default, line breaking will only partially work with Pygments output; `breakbefore` and `breakafter` will not work with any characters that do not appear literally in Pygments output but rather are replaced with a character macro. Also, `breakbytoken` and `breakbytokenanywhere` will not function at all.

```
\VerbatimPygments{literal_macro}{actual_macro}
```

To enable full Pygments support, use this macro before `\begin{Verbatim}`, etc. This macro must be used within `\begingroup... \endgroup` to prevent settings from escaping into the rest of the document. It may be used safely at the beginning of a `\newenvironment` definition. When used with `\newcommand`, though, the `\begingroup... \endgroup` will need to be inserted explicitly.

`literal_macro` is the Pygments macro that literally appears in Pygments output; it corresponds to the Pygments `commandprefix`. For `minted` and `pythontex`, this is `\PYG`. `actual_macro` is the Pygments macro that should actually be used. For `minted` and `pythontex`, this is `\PYG<style>`. In the `minted` and `pythontex` approach, code is only highlighted once (`\PYG`), and then the style is changed by redefining the macro that literally appears (`\PYG`) to use the appropriate style macro (`\PYG<style>`).

`\VerbatimPygments` takes the two Pygments macros and redefines `literal_macro` so that it will invoke `actual_macro` while fully supporting line breaks, `breakbytoken`, and `breakbytokenanywhere`. No further modification of either `literal_macro` or `actual_macro` is possible after `\VerbatimPygments` is used.

In packages that do not make a distinction between `literal_macro` and `actual_macro`, simply use `\VerbatimPygments` with two identical arguments; `\VerbatimPygments` is defined to handle this case.

9 Patches

`fvextra` modifies some `fancyvrb` behavior that is the result of bugs or omissions.

9.1 Visible spaces

The command `\FancyVerbSpace` defines the visible space when `showspaces=true`. The default `fancyvrb` definition allows a font command to escape under some circumstances, so that all following text is forced to be teletype font. The command is redefined following <https://tex.stackexchange.com/a/120231/10742>.

9.2 obeytabs with visible tabs and with tabs inside macro arguments

The original `fancyvrb` treatment of visible tabs when `showtabs=true` and `obeytabs=true` did not allow variable-width tab symbols such as `\rightarrowfill` to function correctly. This is fixed through a redefinition of `\FV@TrueTab`.

Various macros associated with `obeytabs=true` are also redefined so that tabs may be expanded regardless of whether they are within a group (within `{...}` with the normal \LaTeX meaning due to `commandchars`, etc.). In the `fancyvrb` implementation, using `obeytabs=true` when a tab is inside a group typically causes the entire line to vanish. `fvextra` patches this so that the tab is expanded and will be visible if `showtabs=true`. Note, though, that the tab expansion in

these cases is only guaranteed to be correct for leading whitespace that is inside a group. The start of each run of whitespace that is inside a group is treated as a tab stop, whether or not it actually is, due to limitations of the tab expansion algorithm. A more detailed discussion is provided in the implementation.

The example below shows correct tab expansion of leading whitespace within a macro argument. With `fancyvrb`, the line of text would simply vanish in this case.

```
\begin{Verbatim}[obeytabs, showtabs, showspaces, tabsize=4,
  commandchars=\\\{\}, tab=\textcolor{orange}{\rightarrowfill}]
\textcolor{blue}{          ↗          ↗Text after 1 space + 2 tabs}
\end{Verbatim}
```

```
↳→→→→Text after 1 space + 2 tabs
```

The next example shows that tab expansion inside macros in the midst of text typically does not match up with the correct tab stops, since in such circumstances the beginning of the run of whitespace must be treated as a tab stop.

```
\begin{Verbatim}[obeytabs, showtabs, commandchars=\\\{\},
  tab=\textcolor{orange}{\rightarrowfill}]
\textcolor{blue}{          ↗          ↗2 leading tabs}
\textcolor{blue}{Text ↗          ↗then 2 tabs}
\end{Verbatim}
```

```
→→→→→2 leading tabs
Text→→→→→then 2 tabs
```

9.3 Math mode

9.3.1 Spaces

When typeset math is included within verbatim material, `fancyvrb` makes spaces within the math appear literally.

```
\begin{Verbatim}[commandchars=\\\{\}, mathescape]
Verbatim $\displaystyle\frac{1}{x^2 + y^2}$ verbatim
\end{Verbatim}
```

```
Verbatim  $\frac{1}{x^2 + y^2}$  verbatim
```

`fvextra` patches this by redefining `fancyvrb`'s space character within math mode so that it behaves as expected:

```
Verbatim  $\frac{1}{x^2 + y^2}$  verbatim
```

9.3.2 Symbols and fonts

With `fancyvrb`, using a single quotation mark (') in typeset math within verbatim material results in an error rather than a prime symbol (').⁸ `fvextra` redefines the behavior of the single quotation mark within math mode to fix this, so that it will become a proper prime.

The `amsmath` package provides a `\text` command for including normal text within math. With `fancyvrb`, `\text` does not behave normally when used in typeset math within verbatim material. `fvextra` redefines the backtick (``) and the single quotation mark so that they function normally within `\text`, becoming left and right quotation marks. It redefines the greater-than sign, less-than sign, comma, and hyphen so that they function normally as well. `fvextra` also switches back to the default document font within `\text`, rather than using the verbatim font, which is typically a monospace or typewriter font.

The result of these modifications is a math mode that very closely mimics the behavior of normal math mode outside of verbatim material.

```
\begin{Verbatim}[commandchars=\\\{\}, mathescape]
Verbatim  $f'''(x) = \text{"Some quoted text---"}\$
\end{Verbatim}$ 
```

Verbatim $f'''(x) = \text{"Some quoted text---"}$

9.4 Orphaned labels

When `frame=lines` is used with a label, `fancyvrb` does not prevent the label from being orphaned under some circumstances. `\FV@BeginListFrame@Lines` is patched to prevent this.

9.5 rulecolor and fillcolor

The `rulecolor` and `fillcolor` options are redefined so that they accept color names directly, rather than requiring `\color{<color_name>}`. The definitions still allow the old usage.

9.6 Command lookahead tokenization

`\FV@Command` is used internally by commands like `\Verb` to read stars (*) and optional arguments ([...]) before invoking the core of the command. This is redefined so that lookahead tokenizes under a verbatim catcode regime. The original definition could prevent commands like `\Verb` from using characters like % as delimiters, because the lookahead for a star and optional argument could read the % and give it its normal meaning of comment character. The new definition fixes this, so that commands like `\Verb` behave as closely to `\verb` as possible.

⁸The single quotation mark is made active within verbatim material to prevent ligatures, via `\@noligs`. The default definition is incompatible with math mode.

10 Additional modifications to fancyvrb

`fvextra` modifies some `fancyvrb` behavior with the intention of improving logical consistency or providing better defaults.

10.1 Backtick and single quotation mark

With `fancyvrb`, the backtick ``` and typewriter single quotation mark `'` are typeset as the left and right curly single quotation marks `‘`. `fvextra` loads the `upquote` package so that these characters will appear literally by default. The original `fancyvrb` behavior can be restored with the `fvextra` option `curlyquotes` (section 3).

10.2 Line numbering

With `fancyvrb`, using `firstnumber` to offset line numbering in conjunction with `stepnumber` changes which line numbers appear. Lines are numbered if their original line numbers, without the `firstnumber` offset, are a multiple of `stepnumber`. But the actual numbers that appear are the offset values that include `firstnumber`. Thus, using `firstnumber=2` with `stepnumber=5` would cause the original lines 5, 10, 15, ... to be numbered, but with the values 6, 11, 16,

`fvextra` changes line numbering so that when `stepnumber` is used, the actual line numbers that appear are always multiples of `stepnumber` by default, regardless of any `firstnumber` offset. The original `fancyvrb` behavior may be turned on by setting `stepnumberoffsetvalues=true` (section 3).

11 Undocumented features of fancyvrb

`fancyvrb` defines some potentially useful but undocumented features.

11.1 Undocumented options

`codes*` (macro) (default: `<empty>`)
`fancyvrb`'s `codes` is used to specify catcode changes. It overwrites any existing `codes`. `codes*` appends changes to existing settings.

`defineactive*` (macro) (default: `<empty>`)
`fancyvrb`'s `defineactive` is used to define the effect of active characters. It overwrites any existing `defineactive`. `defineactive*` appends changes to existing settings.

`formatcom*` (macro) (default: `<empty>`)
`fancyvrb`'s `formatcom` is used to execute commands before verbatim text. It overwrites any existing `formatcom`. `formatcom*` appends changes to existing settings.

11.2 Undocumented macros

`\FancyVerbTab`

This defines the visible tab character (`\`) that is used when `showtabs=true`. The default definition is

```

%\def\FancyVerbTab{%
% \valign{%
%   \vfil##\vfil\cr
%   \hbox{\scriptscriptstyle-}\cr
%   \hbox to Opt{\hss\scriptscriptstyle\rangle\mskip -.8mu}\cr
%   \hbox{\scriptstyle\mskip -3mu\mid\mskip -1.4mu}\cr}}
%
```

While this may be redefined directly, `fvextra` also defines a new option `tab`

`\FancyVerbSpace`

This defines the visible space character (`_`) that is used when `showspaces=true`. The default definition (as patched by `fvextra`, section 9.1) follows <https://tex.stackexchange.com/a/120231/10742>. While this may be redefined directly, `fvextra` also defines a new option `space`.

12 Implementation

12.1 Required packages

The `upquote` package performs some font checks when it is loaded to determine whether `textcomp` is needed, but errors can result if the font is changed later in the preamble, so duplicate the package's font check at the end of the preamble. Also check for a package order issue with `lineno` and `csquotes`.

```

1 \RequirePackage{etoolbox}
2 \RequirePackage{fancyvrb}
3 \RequirePackage{upquote}
4 \AtEndPreamble{%
5   \ifx\encodingdefault\upquote@OTone
6     \ifx\ttdefault\upquote@cmtt\else\RequirePackage{textcomp}\fi
7   \else
8     \RequirePackage{textcomp}
9   \fi}
10 \RequirePackage{lineno}
11 \@ifpackageloaded{csquotes}%
12 {\PackageWarning{fvextra}{csquotes should be loaded after fvextra, %
13  to avoid a warning from the lineno package}}{}
```

12.2 Utility macros

12.2.1 `fancyvrb` space and tab tokens

`\FV@ActiveSpaceToken` Active space for `\ifx` token comparisons.

```

14 \begingroup
15 \catcode`\_ =\active%
16 \gdef\FV@ActiveSpaceToken{ }%
17 \endgroup%
```

`\FV@SpaceCatTen` Space with catcode 10. Used instead of `_` and `\space` in some contexts to avoid issues in the event that these are redefined.

```

18 \edef\FV@SpaceCatTen{{\detokenize{ }}}
```

`\FV@FVSpaceToken` Macro with the same definition as `fancyvrb`'s active space. Useful for `\ifx` comparisons, such as `\@ifnextchar` lookaheads.

```
19 \def\FV@FVSpaceToken{\FV@Space}
```

`\FV@FVTabToken` Macro with the same definition as `fancyvrb`'s active tab. Useful for `\ifx` comparisons, such as `\@ifnextchar` lookaheads.

```
20 \def\FV@FVTabToken{\FV@Tab}
```

12.2.2 ASCII processing

`\FVExtraDoSpecials` Apply `\do` to all printable, non-alphanumeric ASCII characters (codepoints 0x20 through 0x7E except for alphanumeric characters).

These punctuation marks and symbols are the most likely characters to be made `\active`, so it is convenient to be able to change the catcodes for all of them, not just for those in the `\dospecials` defined in `latex.ltx`:

```
%\def\dospecials{\do\ \do\\\do\{\do\}\do\$\do\&%
% \do#\do\^\do\_ \do%\do\~}
%
```

If a command takes an argument delimited by a given symbol, but that symbol has been made `\active` and defined as `\outer` (perhaps it is being used as a short `\verb`), then changing the symbol's catcode is the only way to use it as a delimiter.

```
21 \def\FVExtraDoSpecials{%
22 \do\ \do\!\do\\"\do\#\do\$\do\%\do\&\do\'\do\(\do\)\do\*\do\+\do\,\do\-%
23 \do\.\do\/\do\:\do\;\do\<\do\=\do\>\do\?\do\@\do\[\do\\\do\]\do\^\do\_%
24 \do\^\do\{\do\|\do\}\do\~}
```

`\FV@Special:<char>` Create macros for all printable, non-alphanumeric ASCII characters. This is used in creating backslash escapes that can only be applied to ASCII symbols and punctuation; these macros serve as `\ifcsname` lookups for valid escapes.

```
25 \begingroup
26 \def\do#1{%
27 \expandafter\global\expandafter
28 \let\csname FV@Special:\expandafter@gobble\detokenize{#1}\endcsname\relax}
29 \FVExtraDoSpecials
30 \endgroup
```

12.2.3 Sentinels

Sentinel macros are needed for scanning tokens.

There are two contexts in which sentinels may be needed. In delimited macro arguments, such as `\def\macro#1\sentinel{...}`, a sentinel is needed as the delimiter. Because the delimiting macro need not be defined, special delimiting macros need not be created for this case. The important thing is to ensure that the macro name is sufficiently unique to avoid collisions. Typically, using `\makeatletter` to allow something like `\@sentinel` will be sufficient. For added security, additional characters can be given catcode 11, to allow things like `\@sent!nel`.

The other context for sentinels is in scanning through a sequence of tokens that is delimited by a sentinel, and using `\ifx` comparisons to identify the sentinel and stop scanning. In this case, using an undefined macro is risky. Under normal conditions, the sequence of tokens could contain an undefined macro due to mistyping. In

some `fvextra` applications, the tokens will have been incorrectly tokenized under a normal catcode regime, and need to be retokenized as verbatim, in which case undefined macros must be expected. Thus, a sentinel macro whose expansion is resistant to collisions is needed.

`\FV@<Sentinel>` This is the standard default `fvextra` delimited-macro sentinel. It is used with `\makeatletter` by changing `<` and `>` to catcode 11. The `<` and `>` add an extra level of collision resistance. Because it is undefined, it is *only* appropriate for use in delimited macro arguments.

`\FV@Sentinel` This is the standard `fvextra` `\ifx` comparison sentinel. It expands to the control word `\FV@<Sentinel>`, which is very unlikely to be in any other macro since it requires that `@`, `<`, and `>` all have catcode 11 and appear in the correct sequence. Because its definition is itself undefined, this sentinel will result in an error if it escapes.

```

31 \begingroup
32 \catcode`\<=11
33 \catcode`\>=11
34 \gdef\FV@Sentinel{\FV@<Sentinel>}
35 \endgroup

```

12.2.4 Active character definitions

`\FV@OuterDefEOLEmpty` Macro for defining the active end-of-line character \r , which `fancyvrb` uses to prevent runaway command arguments. `fancyvrb` uses macro definitions of the form

```

%\begingroup
%\catcode`\r=\active%
%\gdef\macro{%
% ...
% \outer\def\r{}%
% ...
%}%
%\endgroup
%
```

While this works, it is nice to avoid the `\begingroup... \endgroup` and especially the requirement that all lines now end with `%` to discard the \r that would otherwise be inserted.

```

36 \begingroup
37 \catcode`\r=\active%
38 \gdef\FV@OuterDefEOLEmpty{\outer\def\r{}%
39 \endgroup

```

`\FV@DefEOLEmpty` The same thing, without the `\outer`. This is used to ensure that \r is not `\outer` when it should be read.

```

40 \begingroup
41 \catcode`\r=\active%
42 \gdef\FV@DefEOLEmpty{\def\r{}%
43 \endgroup

```

`\FV@OuterDefSTXEmpty` Define start-of-text (STX) `^^B` so that it cannot be used inside other macros. This makes it possible to guarantee that `^^B` is not part of a verbatim argument, so that it can be used later as a sentinel in retokenizing the argument.

```
44 \begingroup
45 \catcode`^^B=\active
46 \gdef\FV@OuterDefSTXEmpty{\outer\def^^B{}}
47 \endgroup
```

`\FV@OuterDefETXEmpty` Define end-of-text (ETX) `^^C` so that it cannot be used inside other macros. This makes it possible to guarantee that `^^C` is not part of a verbatim argument, so that it can be used later as a sentinel in retokenizing the argument.

```
48 \begingroup
49 \catcode`^^C=\active
50 \gdef\FV@OuterDefETXEmpty{\outer\def^^C{}}
51 \endgroup
```

12.3 pdfTeX with inputenc using UTF-8

Working with verbatim text often involves handling individual code points. While these are treated as single entities under LuaTeX and XeTeX, under pdfTeX code points must be handled at the byte level instead. This means that reading a single code point encoded in UTF-8 may involve a macro that reads up to four arguments.

Macros are defined for working with non-ASCII code points under pdfTeX. These are only for use with the `inputenc` package set to `utf8` encoding.

`\ifFV@pdfTeXinputenc` All of the UTF macros are only needed with pdfTeX when `inputenc` is loaded, so they are created conditionally, inspired by the approach of the `iftex` package. The tests deal with the possibility that a previous test using `\ifx` rather than the cleaner `\ifcsname` has already been performed. These assume that `inputenc` will be loaded before `fvextra`. The `\inputencodingname` tests should be redundant after the `\@ifpackageloaded` test, but do provide some additional safety if another package is faking `inputenc` being loaded but not providing an equivalent encoding interface.

Note that an encoding test of the form

```
%\ifdefstring{\inputencodingname}{utf8}{<true>}{<false>}
%
```

is still required before switching to the UTF variants in any given situation. A document using `inputenc` can switch encodings (for example, around an `\input`), so simply checking encoding when `fvextra` is loaded is *not* sufficient.

```
52 \newif\ifFV@pdfTeXinputenc
53 \FV@pdfTeXinputencfalse
54 \ifcsname pdfmatch\endcsname
55 \ifx\pdfmatch\relax
56 \else
57 \@ifpackageloaded{inputenc}%
58 {\ifcsname inputencodingname\endcsname
59 \ifx\inputencodingname\relax
60 \else
61 \FV@pdfTeXinputenctrue
62 \fi\fi}
```

```

63   {}%
64 \fi\fi

```

Define UTF macros conditionally:

```

65 \ifFV@pdfTeXinputenc

```

`\FV@U8:<byte>` Define macros of the form `\FV@U8:<byte>` for each active byte. These are used for determining whether a token is the first byte in a multi-byte sequence, and if so, invoking the necessary macro to capture the remaining bytes. The code is adapted from the beginning of `utf8.def`. Completely capitalized macro names are used to avoid having to worry about `\uppercase`.

```

66 \begingroup
67 \catcode`\~ =13
68 \catcode`\" =12
69 \def\FV@UTFviii@loop{%
70   \uccode`\~\count@
71   \uppercase\expandafter{\FV@UTFviii@Tmp}%
72   \advance\count@\@ne
73   \ifnum\count@<\@tempcnta
74   \expandafter\FV@UTFviii@loop
75   \fi}

```

Setting up 2-byte UTF-8:

```

76 \count@"C2
77 \@tempcnta"E0
78 \def\FV@UTFviii@Tmp{\expandafter\gdef\csname FV@U8:\string~\endcsname{%
79   \FV@UTF@two@octets}}
80 \FV@UTFviii@loop

```

Setting up 3-byte UTF-8:

```

81 \count@"E0
82 \@tempcnta"F0
83 \def\FV@UTFviii@Tmp{\expandafter\gdef\csname FV@U8:\string~\endcsname{%
84   \FV@UTF@three@octets}}
85 \FV@UTFviii@loop

```

Setting up 4-byte UTF-8:

```

86 \count@"F0
87 \@tempcnta"F4
88 \def\FV@UTFviii@Tmp{\expandafter\gdef\csname FV@U8:\string~\endcsname{%
89   \FV@UTF@four@octets}}
90 \FV@UTFviii@loop
91 \endgroup

```

`\FV@UTF@two@octets` These are variants of the `utf8.def` macros that capture all bytes of a multi-
`\FV@UTF@three@octets` byte code point and then pass them on to `\FV@UTF@octets@after` as a single
`\FV@UTF@four@octets` argument for further processing. The invoking macro should `\let` or `\def`'ed
`\FV@UTF@octets@after` to an appropriate macro that performs further processing.

Typical use will involve the following steps:

1. Read a token, say #1.
2. Use `\ifcsname FV@U8:\detokenize{#1}\endcsname` to determine that the token is the first byte of a multi-byte code point.

3. Ensure that `\FV@UTF@octets@after` has an appropriate value, if this has not already been done.
4. Use `\csname FV@U8:\detokenize{#1}\endcsname#1` at the end of the original reading macro to read the full multi-byte code point and then pass it on as a single argument to `\FV@UTF@octets@after`.

All code points are checked for validity here so as to raise errors as early as possible. Otherwise an invalid terminal byte sequence might gobble a sentinel macro in a scanning context, potentially making debugging much more difficult. It would be possible to use `\UTFviii@defined{bytes}` to trigger an error directly, but the current approach is to attempt to typeset invalid code points, which should trigger errors without relying on the details of the `utf8.def` implementation.

```

92 \def\FV@UTF@two@octets#1#2{%
93   \ifcsname u8:\detokenize{#1#2}\endcsname
94   \else
95     #1#2%
96   \fi
97   \FV@UTF@octets@after{#1#2}}
98 \def\FV@UTF@three@octets#1#2#3{%
99   \ifcsname u8:\detokenize{#1#2#3}\endcsname
100  \else
101    #1#2#3%
102  \fi
103  \FV@UTF@octets@after{#1#2#3}}
104 \def\FV@UTF@four@octets#1#2#3#4{%
105   \ifcsname u8:\detokenize{#1#2#3#4}\endcsname
106   \else
107     #1#2#3#4%
108   \fi
109   \FV@UTF@octets@after{#1#2#3#4}}

```

End conditional creation of UTF macros:

```
110 \fi
```

12.4 Reading and processing command arguments

`fvextra` provides macros for reading and processing verbatim arguments. These are primarily intended for creating commands that take verbatim arguments but can still be used within other commands (with some limitations). These macros are used in reimplementing `fancyvrb` commands like `\Verb`. They may also be used in other packages; `minted` and `pythontex` use them for handling inline code.

All macros meant for internal use have names of the form `\FV@<Name>`, while all macros meant for use in other packages have names of the form `\FVExtra<Name>`. Only the latter are intended to have a stable interface.

12.4.1 Tokenization and lookahead

`\FVExtra@ifnextcharAny` A version of `\@ifnextchar` that can detect any character, including catcode 10 spaces. This is an exact copy of the definition from `latex.ltx`, modified with the “`\let\reserved@d= #1%`” (note space!) trick from `amsgen`.

```
111 \long\def\FVExtra@ifnextcharAny#1#2#3{%
```

```

112 \let\reserved@d= #1%
113 \def\reserved@a{#2}%
114 \def\reserved@b{#3}%
115 \futurelet\@let@token\FVExtra@ifnchAny}
116 \def\FVExtra@ifnchAny{%
117 \ifx\@let@token\reserved@d
118 \expandafter\reserved@a
119 \else
120 \expandafter\reserved@b
121 \fi}

```

`\FVExtra@ifnextcharVArg` This is a wrapper for `\@ifnextchar` from `latex.ltx` (`ltxdefs.dtx`) that tokenizes lookaheads under a mostly verbatim catcode regime rather than the current catcode regime. This is important when looking ahead for stars `*` and optional argument delimiters `[`, because if these are not present when looking ahead for a verbatim argument, then the first thing tokenized will be the verbatim argument's delimiting character. Ideally, the delimiter should be tokenized under a verbatim catcode regime. This is necessary for instance if the delimiter is `\active` and `\outer`.

The catcode of the space is preserved (in the unlikely event it is `\active`) and curly braces are given their normal catcodes for the lookahead. This simplifies space handling in an untokenized context, and allows paired curly braces to be used as verbatim delimiters.

```

122 \long\def\FVExtra@ifnextcharVArg#1#2#3{%
123 \begingroup
124 \edef\FV@TmpSpaceCat{\the\catcode` }%
125 \let\do\@makeother\FVExtraDoSpecials
126 \catcode`\ =\FV@TmpSpaceCat\relax
127 \catcode`\{=1
128 \catcode`\}=2
129 \@ifnextchar#1{\endgroup#2}{\endgroup#3}}

```

`\FVExtra@ifstarVArg` A starred command behaves differently depending on whether it is followed by an optional star or asterisk `*`. `\@ifstar` from `latex.ltx` is typically used to check for the `*`. In the process, it discards following spaces (catcode 10) and tokenizes the next non-space character under the current catcode regime. While this is fine for normal commands, it is undesirable if the next character turns out to be not a `*` but rather a verbatim argument's delimiter. This reimplementation prevents such issues for all printable ASCII symbols via `\FVExtra@ifnextcharVArg`.

```

130 \begingroup
131 \catcode`\*=12
132 \gdef\FVExtra@ifstarVArg#1{\FVExtra@ifnextcharVArg*\@firstoftwo{#1}}
133 \endgroup

```

12.4.2 Reading arguments

`\FV@Read0ArgContinue` Read a macro followed by an optional argument, then pass the optional argument to the macro for processing and to continue.

```

134 \def\FV@Read0ArgContinue#1[#2]{#1{#2}}

```

`\FVExtraRead0ArgBeforeVArg` Read an optional argument that comes before a verbatim argument. The lookahead for the optional argument tokenizes with a verbatim catcode regime in case it encounters the delimiter for the verbatim argument rather than `[`. If the lookahead

doesn't find [, the optional argument for `\FVExtraRead0ArgBeforeVArg` can be used to supply a default optional argument other than *(empty)*.

```

135 \newcommand{\FVExtraRead0ArgBeforeVArg}[2] [] {%
136   \FVExtra@ifnextcharVArg [%
137     {\FV@Read0ArgContinue{#2}}%
138     {\FV@Read0ArgContinue{#2}[#1]}}

```

`\FVExtraRead0ArgBeforeVEnv` Read an optional argument at the start of a verbatim environment, after the `\begin{(environment)}` but before the start of the next line where the verbatim content begins. Check for extraneous content after the optional argument and discard the following newline. Note that this is not needed when an environment takes a mandatory argument that follows the optional argument.

The case with only an optional argument is tricky because the default behavior of `\@ifnextchar` is to read into the next line looking for the optional argument. Setting `^^M` as `\active` prevents this. That does mean, though, that the end-of-line token will have to be read and removed later as an `\active ^^M`.

`\@ifnextchar` is used instead of `\FVExtra@ifnextcharVArg` because the latter is not needed since there is an explicit, required delimiter (`^^M`) before the actual start of verbatim content. Lookahead can never tokenize verbatim content under an incorrect catcode regime.

```

139 \newcommand{\FVExtraRead0ArgBeforeVEnv}[2] [] {%
140   \begingroup
141   \catcode\^^M=\active
142   \@ifnextchar [%
143     {\endgroup\FVExtraRead0ArgBeforeVEnv@i{#2}}%
144     {\endgroup\FVExtraRead0ArgBeforeVEnv@i{#2}[#1]}}
145 \def\FVExtraRead0ArgBeforeVEnv@i#1[#2] {%
146   \begingroup
147   \catcode\^^M=\active
148   \FVExtraRead0ArgBeforeVEnv@ii{#1}{#2}}
149 \begingroup
150 \catcode\^^M=\active%
151 \gdef\FVExtraRead0ArgBeforeVEnv@ii#1#2#3^^M{%
152   \endgroup%
153   \FVExtraRead0ArgBeforeVEnv@iii{#1}{#2}{#3}}%
154 \endgroup%
155 \def\FVExtraRead0ArgBeforeVEnv@iii#1#2#3{%
156   \if\relax\detokenize{#3}\relax
157   \else
158     \PackageError{fvextra}%
159     {Discarded invalid text while checking for optional argument of verbatim environment}%
160     {Discarded invalid text while checking for optional argument of verbatim environment}%
161   \fi
162   #1{#2}}

```

`\FVExtraReadVArg` Read a verbatim argument that is bounded by two identical characters or by paired curly braces. This uses the `\outer ^^M` with `\FV@EOL` trick from `fancyvrb` to prevent runaway arguments. An `\outer ^^C` is used to prevent `^^C` from being part of arguments, so that it can be used later as a sentinel if retokenization is needed. `^^B` is handled in the same manner for symmetry with later usage, though technically it is not used as a sentinel so this is not strictly necessary. Alternate UTF macros, defined later, are invoked when under pdfTeX with `inputenc` using UTF-8.

The lookahead for the type of delimiting character is done under a verbatim catcode regime, except that the space catcode is preserved and curly braces are given their normal catcodes. This provides consistency with any `\FVExtra@ifnextcharVArg` or `\FVExtra@ifstarVArg` that may have been used previously, allows characters like # and % to be used as delimiters when the verbatim argument is read outside any other commands (untokenized), and allows paired curly braces to serve as delimiters. Any additional command-specific catcode modifications should only be applied to the argument after it has been read, since they do not apply to the delimiters.

Once the delimiter lookahead is complete, catcodes revert to full verbatim, and are then modified appropriately given the type of delimiter. The space and tab must be `\active` to be preserved correctly when the verbatim argument is not inside any other commands (otherwise, they collapse into single spaces).

```

163 \def\FVExtraReadVArg#1{%
164   \begingroup
165   \ifFV@pdfTeXinputenc
166     \ifdefstring{\inputencodingname}{utf8}%
167       {\let\FV@ReadVArg@Char\FV@ReadVArg@Char@UTF}%
168       {}}%
169   \fi
170   \edef\FV@TmpSpaceCat{\the\catcode` }%
171   \let\do\@makeother\FVExtraDoSpecials
172   \catcode`\^B=\active
173   \FV@OuterDefSTXEmpty
174   \catcode`\^C=\active
175   \FV@OuterDefETXEmpty
176   \catcode`\^M=\active
177   \FV@OuterDefEOLEmpty
178   \begingroup
179   \catcode`\ =\FV@TmpSpaceCat\relax
180   \catcode`\{=1
181   \catcode`\}=2
182   \@ifnextchar\bgroup
183     {\endgroup
184       \catcode`\{=1
185       \catcode`\}=2
186       \catcode`\ =\active
187       \catcode`\^I=\active
188       \FV@ReadVArg@Group{#1}\FV@EOL}%
189     {\endgroup
190       \catcode`\ =\active
191       \catcode`\^I=\active
192       \FV@ReadVArg@Char{#1}\FV@EOL}}

```

`\FV@ReadVArg@Group` The argument is read under the verbatim catcode regime already in place from `\FVExtraReadVArg`. The `\endgroup` returns to prior catcodes. Any command-specific catcodes can be applied later via `\scantokens`. Using them here in reading the argument would have no effect as far as later processing with `\scantokens` is concerned, unless the argument were read outside any other commands and additional characters were given catcodes 1 or 2 (like the curly braces). That scenario is not allowed because it makes reading the argument overly dependent on the argument content. (Technically, reading the argument is already dependent

on the argument content in the sense that the argument cannot contain unescaped unpaired curly braces, given that it is delimited by curly braces.)

```
193 \def\FV@ReadVArg@Group#1#2#3{%
194   \endgroup
195   #1{#3}}
```

`\FV@ReadVArg@Char` The delimiting character is read under the verbatim catcode regime in place from `\FVExtraReadVArg`. If the command is not inside a normal command, then this means the delimiting character will typically have catcode 12 and that characters like `#` and `%` can be used as delimiters; otherwise, the delimiter may have any catcode that is possible for a single character captured by a macro. If the argument is read inside another command (already tokenized), then it is possible for the delimiter to be a control sequence rather than a single character. An error is raised in this case. The `\endgroup` in `\FV@ReadVArg@Char@i` returns to prior catcodes after the argument is captured.

It would be possible to read the argument using any command-specific catcode settings, but that would result in different behavior depending on whether the argument is already tokenized, and would make reading the argument overly dependent on the argument content.

```
196 \def\FV@ReadVArg@Char#1#2#3{%
197   \expandafter\expandafter\expandafter
198   \if\expandafter\expandafter\expandafter\relax\expandafter\@gobble\detokenize{#3}\relax
199     \expandafter\@gobble
200   \else
201     \expandafter\@firstofone
202   \fi
203   {\PackageError{fvextra}%
204     {Verbatim delimiters must be single characters, not commands}%
205     {Try a different delimiter}}%
206   \def\FV@ReadVArg@Char@i##1##2##3#3{%
207     \endgroup
208     ##1{##3}}%
209   \FV@ReadVArg@Char@i{#1}\FV@EOL}%
```

Alternate implementation for pdfTeX with inputenc using UTF-8

Start conditional creation of macros:

```
210 \ifFV@pdfTeXinputenc
```

`\FV@ReadVArg@Char@UTF` This is a variant of `\FV@ReadVArg@Char` that allows non-ASCII codepoints as delimiters under the pdfTeX engine with `inputenc` using UTF-8. Under pdfTeX, non-ASCII codepoints must be handled as a sequence of bytes rather than as a single entity. `\FV@ReadVArg@Char` is automatically `\let` to this version when appropriate. This uses the `\FV@U8:<byte>` macros for working with `inputenc`'s UTF-8.

```
211 \def\FV@ReadVArg@Char@UTF#1#2#3{%
212   \expandafter\expandafter\expandafter
213   \if\expandafter\expandafter\expandafter\relax\expandafter\@gobble\detokenize{#3}\relax
214     \expandafter\@gobble
215   \else
216     \expandafter\@firstofone
```

```

217 \fi
218 {\PackageError{fvextra}%
219   {Verbatim delimiters must be single characters, not commands}%
220   {Try a different delimiter}}%
221 \ifcsname FV@U8:\detokenize{#3}\endcsname
222   \expandafter\@firstoftwo
223 \else
224   \expandafter\@secondoftwo
225 \fi
226 {\def\FV@UTF@octets@after##1{\FV@ReadVArg@Char@UTF@i{#1}{##1}}%
227   \csname FV@U8:\detokenize{#3}\endcsname#3}%
228 {\FV@ReadVArg@Char@UTF@i{#1}{##1}}

```

`\FV@ReadVArg@Char@UTF@i`

```

229 \def\FV@ReadVArg@Char@UTF@i#1#2{%
230   \def\FV@ReadVArg@Char@i##1##2##3#2{%
231     \endgroup
232     ##1{##3}}%
233   \FV@ReadVArg@Char@i{#1}\FV@EOL}%

```

End conditional creation of UTF macros:

```
234 \fi
```

12.4.3 Reading and protecting arguments in expansion-only contexts

The objective here is to make possible commands that can function correctly after being in expansion-only contexts like `\edef`. The general strategy is to allow commands to be defined like this:

```

%\def\cmd{\FVExtraRobustCommand\robustcmd\reader}
%

```

`\robustcmd` is the actual command, including argument reading and processing, and is `\protected`. `\reader` is an expandable macro that reads all of `\robustcmd`'s arguments, then wraps them in `\FVExtraAlwaysUnexpanded`. When `\FVExtraAlwaysUnexpanded{<args>}` is expanded, the result is always `\FVExtraAlwaysUnexpanded{<args>}`. `\FVExtraRobustCommand` is `\protected` and manages everything in a context-sensitive manner.

- In a normal context, `\FVExtraRobustCommand` reads two arguments, which will be `\robustcmd` and `\reader`. It detects that `\reader` has not expanded to `\FVExtraAlwaysUnexpanded{<args>}`, so it discards `\reader` and reinserts `\robustcmd` so that it can operate normally.
- In an expansion-only context, neither `\FVExtraRobustCommand` nor `\robustcmd` will expand, because both are `\protected`. `\reader` will read `\robustcmd`'s arguments and protect them with `\FVExtraAlwaysUnexpanded`. When this is used later in a normal context, `\FVExtraRobustCommand` reads two arguments, which will be `\robustcmd` and `\FVExtraAlwaysUnexpanded`. It detects that `\reader` did expand, so it discards `\FVExtraAlwaysUnexpanded` and reads its argument to discard the wrapping braces. Then it reinserts `\robustcmd<args>` so that everything can proceed as if expansion had not occurred.

`\FVExtrapdfstringdef` Conditionally allow alternate definitions for PDF bookmarks when `hyperref` is in use. This is helpful for working with `\protected` or otherwise unexpandable commands.

```

235 \def\FVExtrapdfstringdef#1#2{%
236   \AfterPreamble{%
237     \ifcsname pdfstringdef\endcsname
238     \ifx\pdfstringdef\relax
239     \else
240     \pdfstringdef#1{#2}%
241     \fi\fi}}
242 \def\FVExtrapdfstringdefDisableCommands#1{%
243   \AfterPreamble{%
244     \ifcsname pdfstringdefDisableCommands\endcsname
245     \ifx\pdfstringdefDisableCommands\relax
246     \else
247     \pdfstringdefDisableCommands{#1}%
248     \fi\fi}}

```

`\FVExtraAlwaysUnexpanded` Always expands to itself, thanks to `\unexpanded`.

```

249 \long\def\FVExtraAlwaysUnexpanded#1{%
250   \unexpanded{\FVExtraAlwaysUnexpanded{#1}}}
251 \FVExtrapdfstringdefDisableCommands{%
252   \long\def\FVExtraAlwaysUnexpanded#1{#1}}

```

`FVExtraRobustCommandExpanded` Boolean to track whether expansion occurred. Set in `\FVExtraRobustCommand`. Useful in creating commands that behave differently depending on whether expansion occurred.

```

253 \newbool{FVExtraRobustCommandExpanded}

```

`\FVExtraRobustCommand`

```

254 \protected\def\FVExtraRobustCommand#1#2{%
255   \ifx#2\FVExtraAlwaysUnexpanded
256   \expandafter\@firstoftwo
257   \else
258   \expandafter\@secondoftwo
259   \fi
260   {\booltrue{FVExtraRobustCommandExpanded}\FV@RobustCommand@i{#1}}%
261   {\boolfalse{FVExtraRobustCommandExpanded}#1}}
262 \FVExtrapdfstringdefDisableCommands{%
263   \def\FVExtraRobustCommand{}}

```

`\FV@RobustCommand@i` #2 will be the argument of `\FVExtraAlwaysUnexpanded`. Reading this strips the braces. At the beginning of #2 will be the reader macro, which must be `\@gobble`'d.

```

264 \def\FV@RobustCommand@i#1#2{\expandafter#1\@gobble#2}

```

`extraUnexpandedReadStar0ArgMArg` Read the arguments for a command that may be starred, may have an optional argument, and has a single brace-delimited mandatory argument. Then protect them with `\FVExtraAlwaysUnexpanded`. The reader macro is itself maintained in the protected result, so that it can be redefined to provide a simple default value for `hyperref`.

Note the argument signature `#1#{`. This reads everything up to, but not including, the next brace group.

```

265 \def\FVExtraUnexpandedReadStar0ArgMArg#1#{%
266 \FV@UnexpandedReadStar0ArgMArg@i{#1}}

```

`\FV@UnexpandedReadStar0ArgMArg@i`

```

267 \def\FV@UnexpandedReadStar0ArgMArg@i#1#2{%
268 \FVExtraAlwaysUnexpanded{\FVExtraUnexpandedReadStar0ArgMArg#1{#2}}}
269 \FVExtrapdfstringdefDisableCommands{%
270 \makeatletter
271 \def\FV@UnexpandedReadStar0ArgMArg@i#1#2{#2}%
272 \makeatother}

```

`\FV@UnexpandedReadStar0ArgMArg`

This is a variant of `\FVExtraUnexpandedReadStar0ArgMArg` customized for `\UseVerb`. It would be tempting to use `\pdfstringdef` to define a PDF string based on the final tokenization in `\UseVerb`, rather than applying `\FVExtraPDFStringVerbatimDetokenize` to the original raw (read) tokenization. Unfortunately, `\pdfstringdef` apparently can't handle catcode 12 `\` and `%`. Since the final tokenization could contain arbitrary catcodes, that approach might fail even if the `\` and `%` issue were resolved. It may be worth considering more sophisticated approaches in the future.

```

273 \def\FVExtraUseVerbUnexpandedReadStar0ArgMArg#1#{%
274 \FV@UseVerbUnexpandedReadStar0ArgMArg@i{#1}}

```

`\FV@UseVerbUnexpandedReadStar0ArgMArg@i`

```

275 \def\FV@UseVerbUnexpandedReadStar0ArgMArg@i#1#2{%
276 \FVExtraAlwaysUnexpanded{\FVExtraUseVerbUnexpandedReadStar0ArgMArg#1{#2}}}
277 \FVExtrapdfstringdefDisableCommands{%
278 \makeatletter
279 \def\FV@UseVerbUnexpandedReadStar0ArgMArg@i#1#2{%
280 \ifcsname FV@SVRaw@#2\endcsname
281 \expandafter\expandafter\expandafter\FVExtraPDFStringVerbatimDetokenize
282 \expandafter\expandafter\expandafter{\csname FV@SVRaw@#2\endcsname}%
283 \fi}%
284 \makeatother}

```

`\FV@UnexpandedReadStar0ArgBVar`

Same as `\FVExtraUnexpandedReadStar0ArgMArg`, except `BVar`, brace-delimited verbatim argument.

```

285 \def\FVExtraUnexpandedReadStar0ArgBVar#1#{%
286 \FV@UnexpandedReadStar0ArgBVar@i{#1}}

```

`\FV@UnexpandedReadStar0ArgBVar@i`

```

287 \def\FV@UnexpandedReadStar0ArgBVar@i#1#2{%
288 \FVExtraAlwaysUnexpanded{\FVExtraUnexpandedReadStar0ArgBVar#1{#2}}}
289 \FVExtrapdfstringdefDisableCommands{%
290 \makeatletter
291 \def\FV@UnexpandedReadStar0ArgBVar@i#1#2{%
292 \FVExtraPDFStringVerbatimDetokenize{#2}}%
293 \makeatother}

```

`\FV@UnexpandedReadStar0ArgBEscVar`

Same as `\FVExtraUnexpandedReadStar0ArgMArg`, except `BEscVar`, brace-delimited escaped verbatim argument.

```

294 \def\FVExtraUnexpandedReadStar0ArgBEscVar#1#{%
295 \FV@UnexpandedReadStar0ArgBEscVar@i{#1}}

```

expandedReadStar0ArgBEscVArg@i

```
296 \def\FV@UnexpandedReadStar0ArgBEscVArg@i#1#2{%
297   \FVExtraAlwaysUnexpanded{\FVExtraUnexpandedReadStar0ArgBEscVArg#1{#2}}
298 \FVExtrapdfstringdefDisableCommands{%
299   \makeatletter
300   \def\FV@UnexpandedReadStar0ArgBEscVArg@i#1#2{%
301     \FVExtraPDFStringEscapedVerbatimDetokenize{#2}}%
302   \makeatother}
```

expandedReadStar0ArgMArgBVar Arg Read arguments for a command that has a mandatory argument before a verbatim argument, such as `minted`'s `\mintinline`.

```
303 \def\FVExtraUnexpandedReadStar0ArgMArgBVar#1#2{%
304   \FV@UnexpandedReadStar0ArgMArgBVar@i{#1}}
305 \def\FV@UnexpandedReadStar0ArgMArgBVar@i#1#2{%
306   \FV@UnexpandedReadStar0ArgMArgBVar@ii{#1}{#2}}
307 \def\FV@UnexpandedReadStar0ArgMArgBVar@ii#1#2#3{%
308   \FV@UnexpandedReadStar0ArgMArgBVar@iii{#1}{#2}{#3}}
309 \def\FV@UnexpandedReadStar0ArgMArgBVar@iii#1#2#3#4{%
310   \FVExtraAlwaysUnexpanded{\FVExtraUnexpandedReadStar0ArgMArgBVar#1{#2}#3{#4}}
311 \FVExtrapdfstringdefDisableCommands{%
312   \makeatletter
313   \def\FV@UnexpandedReadStar0ArgMArgBVar@iii#1#2#3#4{%
314     \FVExtraPDFStringVerbatimDetokenize{#4}}%
315   \makeatother}
```

12.4.4 Converting detokenized tokens into PDF strings

At times it will be convenient to convert detokenized tokens into PDF strings, such as bookmarks. Define macros to escape such detokenized content so that it is in a suitable form.

`\FVExtraPDFStringEscapeChar` Note that this does not apply any special treatment to spaces. If there are multiple adjacent spaces, then the octal escape `\040` is needed to prevent them from being merged. In the detokenization macros where `\FVExtraPDFStringEscapeChar` is currently used, spaces are processed separately without `\FVExtraPDFStringEscapeChar`, and literal spaces or `\040` are inserted in a context-dependent manner.

```
316 \def\FVExtraPDFStringEscapeChar#1{%
317   \ifcsname FV@PDFStringEscapeChar@#1\endcsname
318     \csname FV@PDFStringEscapeChar@#1\endcsname
319   \else
320     #1%
321   \fi}
322 \begingroup
323 \catcode`\&=14
324 \catcode`\%=12&
325 \catcode`\(=12&
326 \catcode`\)=12&
327 \catcode`\^^J=12&
328 \catcode`\^^M=12&
329 \catcode`\^^I=12&
330 \catcode`\^^H=12&
331 \catcode`\^^L=12&
332 \catcode`\!=0\relax&
```

```

333 !catcode`\=12!relax&
334 !expandafter!gdef!csname FV@PDFStringEscapeChar@!endcsname{\\}&
335 !expandafter!gdef!csname FV@PDFStringEscapeChar@%!endcsname{\\}&
336 !expandafter!gdef!csname FV@PDFStringEscapeChar@(!endcsname{\\}&
337 !expandafter!gdef!csname FV@PDFStringEscapeChar@)!endcsname{\\}&
338 !expandafter!gdef!csname FV@PDFStringEscapeChar@^^J!endcsname{\n}&
339 !expandafter!gdef!csname FV@PDFStringEscapeChar@^^M!endcsname{\r}&
340 !expandafter!gdef!csname FV@PDFStringEscapeChar@^^I!endcsname{\t}&
341 !expandafter!gdef!csname FV@PDFStringEscapeChar@^^H!endcsname{\b}&
342 !expandafter!gdef!csname FV@PDFStringEscapeChar@^^L!endcsname{\f}&
343 !catcode`\=0!relax&
344 \endgroup

```

`\FVExtraPDFStringEscapeChars`

```

345 \def\FVExtraPDFStringEscapeChars#1{%
346   \FV@PDFStringEscapeChars#1\FV@Sentinel}

```

`\FV@PDFStringEscapeChars`

```

347 \def\FV@PDFStringEscapeChars#1{%
348   \ifx#1\FV@Sentinel
349   \else
350     \FVExtraPDFStringEscapeChar{#1}%
351     \expandafter\FV@PDFStringEscapeChars
352   \fi}%

```

12.4.5 Detokenizing verbatim arguments

Ensure correct catcodes for this subsection (note < and > for `\FV@<Sentinel>`):

```

353 \begingroup
354 \catcode`\ =10
355 \catcode`\a=11
356 \catcode`\<=11
357 \catcode`\>=11
358 \catcode`\^^C=\active

```

Detokenize as if the original source were tokenized verbatim

`\FVExtraVerbatimDetokenize` Detokenize tokens as if their original source was tokenized verbatim, rather than under any other catcode regime that may actually have been in place. This recovers the original source when tokenization was verbatim. Otherwise, it recovers the closest approximation of the source that is possible given information loss during tokenization (for example, adjacent space characters may be merged into a single space token). This is useful in constructing nearly verbatim commands that can be used inside other commands. It functions in an expansion-only context (“fully expandable,” works in `\edef`).

This yields spaces with catcode 12, *not* spaces with catcode 10 like `\detokenize`. Spaces with catcode 10 require special handling when being read by macros, so detokenizing them to catcode 10 makes further processing difficult. Spaces with catcode 12 may be used just like any other catcode 12 token.

This requires that the `\active` end-of-text (ETX) `^^C` (U+0003) not be defined as `\outer`, since `^^C` is used as a sentinel. Usually, it should not be defined at

all, or defined to an error sequence. When in doubt, it may be worth explicitly defining `^^C` before using `\FVExtraVerbatimDetokenize`:

```

%\begingroup
%\catcode`^^C=\active
%\def^^C{}
%...
%\FVExtraVerbatimDetokenize{...}
%...
%\endgroup
%
```

`\detokenize` inserts a space after each control word (control sequence with a name composed of catcode 11 tokens, ASCII letters [a-zA-Z]). For example,

```
\detokenize{\macroA\macroB{ }\csname name\endcsname 123}
```

yields

```
\macroA \macroB { }\csname name\endcsname 123
```

That is the correct behavior when detokenizing text that will later be retokenized for normal use. The space prevents the control word from accidentally merging with any letters that follow it immediately, and will be gobbled by the macro when retokenized. However, the inserted spaces are unwanted in the current context, because

```
\FVExtraVerbatimDetokenize{\macroA\macroB{ }\csname name\endcsname 123}
```

should yield

```
\macroA\macroB{ }\csname_name\endcsname 123
```

Note that the space is visible since it is catcode 12.

Thus, `\FVExtraVerbatimDetokenize` is essentially a context-sensitive wrapper around `\detokenize` that removes extraneous space introduced by `\detokenize`. It iterates through the tokens, detokenizing them individually and then removing any trailing space inserted by `\detokenize`.

```

359 \gdef\FVExtraVerbatimDetokenize#1{%
360   \FV@VDetok@Scan{ }#1^^C \FV@<Sentinel>}
```

`\FV@VDetok@Scan` This scans through a token sequence while performing two tasks:

1. Replace all catcode 10 spaces with catcode 12 spaces.
2. Insert macros that will process groups, after which they will insert yet other macros to process individual tokens.

Usage must *always* have the form

```
\FV@VDetok@Scan{<tokens>}^^C_\FV@<Sentinel>
```

where `^^C` is `\active`, the catcode 10 space after `^^C` is mandatory, and `\FV@<Sentinel>` is a *single*, undefined control word (this is accomplished via catcodes).

- `\FV@VDetok@Scan` searches for spaces to replace. After any spaces in $\langle tokens \rangle$ have been handled, the space in `^^C_\FV@<Sentinel>` triggers space processing. When `\FV@VDetok@Scan` detects the sentinel macro `\FV@<Sentinel>`, scanning stops.
- The `{}` protects the beginning of $\langle tokens \rangle$, so that if $\langle tokens \rangle$ is a group, its braces won't be gobbled. Later, the inserted `{}` must be stripped so that it does not become part the processed $\langle tokens \rangle$.
- `^^C` is a convenient separator between $\langle tokens \rangle$ and the rest of the sentinel sequence.
 - Since `\FV@VDetok@Scan` has delimited arguments, a leading catcode 10 space in $\langle tokens \rangle$ will be preserved automatically. Preserving a trailing catcode 10 space is much easier if it is immediately adjacent to a non-space character in the sentinel sequence; two adjacent catcode 10 spaces would be difficult to handle with macro pattern matching. However, the sentinel sequence must contain a catcode 10 space, so the sentinel sequence must contain at least 3 tokens.
 - Since `^^C` is not a control word, it does not gobble following spaces. That makes it much easier to assemble macro arguments that contain a catcode 10 space. This is useful because the sentinel sequence `^^C_\FV@<Sentinel>` may have to be inserted into processing multiple times (for example, in recursive handling of groups).
 - `\FVExtraReadVArg` defines `^^C` as `\outer`, so any verbatim argument read by it is guaranteed not to contain `^^C`. This is in contrast to `\active` ASCII symbols and to two-character sequences `<backslash><symbol>` that should be expected in arbitrary verbatim content. It is a safe sentinel from that perspective.
 - A search of a complete TeX Live 2018 installation revealed no other uses of `^^C` that would clash (thanks, `ripgrep!`). As a control character, it should not be in common use except as a sentinel or for similar special purposes.

If $\langle tokens \rangle$ is empty or contains no spaces, then `#1` will contain `{}\langle tokens \rangle^^C` and `#2` will be empty. Otherwise, `#1` will contain `{}\langle tokens_to_space \rangle` and `#2` will contain `\langle tokens_after_space \rangle^^C_`.

This uses the `\if\relax\detokenize{\argument}\relax` approach to check for an empty argument. If `#2` is empty, then the space that was just removed by `\FV@VDetok@Scan` reading its arguments was the space in the sentinel sequence, in which case scanning should end. `#1` is passed on raw so that `\FV@VDetok@ScanEnd` can strip the `^^C` from the end, which is the only remaining token from the sentinel sequence `^^C_\FV@<Sentinel>`. Otherwise, if `#2` is not empty, continue. In that case, the braces in `{#1}{#2}` ensure arguments remain intact.

Note that `\FV@<Sentinel>` is removed during each space search, and thus must be reinserted in `\FV@VDetok@ScanCont`. It would be possible to use the macro signature `#1 #2` instead of `#1 #2\FV@<Sentinel>`, and then do an `\ifx` test on `#2` for `\FV@<Sentinel>`. However, that is problematic, because `#2` may contain an arbitrary sequence of arbitrary tokens, so it cannot be used safely without `\detokenize`.

```

361 \gdef\FV@VDetok@Scan#1 #2\FV@<Sentinel>{%
362   \if\relax\detokenize{#2}\relax
363     \expandafter\@firstoftwo
364   \else
365     \expandafter\@secondoftwo
366   \fi
367   {\FV@VDetok@ScanEnd#1}%
368   {\FV@VDetok@ScanCont{#1}{#2}}}
```

`\FV@VDetok@ScanEnd` This removes the `^^C` from the sentinel sequence `^^C\FV@<Sentinel>`, so the sentinel sequence is now completely gone. If `#1` is empty, there is nothing to do (`#1` being empty means that `#1` consumed the `{}` that was inserted to protect anything following, because there was nothing after it). Otherwise, `\@gobble` the inserted `{}` before starting a different scan to deal with groups. The group scanner `\FV@VDetok@ScanGroup` has its own sentinel sequence `{\FV@<Sentinel>}`.

```

369 \gdef\FV@VDetok@ScanEnd#1^^C{%
370   \if\relax\detokenize{#1}\relax
371     \expandafter\@gobble
372   \else
373     \expandafter\@firstofone
374   \fi
375   {\expandafter\FV@VDetok@ScanGroup\@gobble#1{\FV@<Sentinel>}}}
```

`\FV@VDetok@ScanCont` Continue scanning after removing a space in `\FV@VDetok@Scan`.

`#1` is everything before the space. If `#1` is empty, there is nothing to do related to it; `#1` simply consumed an inserted `{}` that preceded nothing (that would be a leading space). Otherwise, start a different scan on `#1` to deal with groups. A non-empty `#1` will start with the `{}` that was inserted to protect groups, hence the `\@gobble` before group scanning.

Then insert a literal catcode 12 space to account for the space removed in `\FV@VDetok@Scan`. Note the catcode, and thus the lack of indentation and the `%` to avoid unwanted catcode 12 spaces.

`#2` is everything after the space, ending with `^^C` from the sentinel sequence `^^C\FV@<Sentinel>`. This needs continued scanning to deal with spaces, with `{}` inserted in front to protect a leading group and `\FV@<Sentinel>` after to complete the sentinel sequence.

```

376 \begingroup
377 \catcode`\ =12%
378 \gdef\FV@VDetok@ScanCont#1#2{%
379   \if\relax\detokenize{#1}\relax%
380   \expandafter\@gobble%
381   \else%
382   \expandafter\@firstofone%
383   \fi%
384   {\expandafter\FV@VDetok@ScanGroup\@gobble#1{\FV@<Sentinel>}}%
385   %<-catcode 12 space
386   \FV@VDetok@Scan{#2\FV@<Sentinel>}%
387 \endgroup
```

`\FV@VDetok@ScanGroup` The macro argument `#1#` reads up to the next group. When this macro is invoked, the sentinel sequence `{\FV@<Sentinel>}` is inserted, so there is guaranteed to be at least one group.

Everything in #1 contains no spaces and no groups, and thus is ready for token scanning, with the sentinel `\FV@Sentinel`. Note that `\FV@Sentinel`, which is defined as `\def\FV@Sentinel{\FV@<Sentinel>}`, is used here, *not* `\FV@<Sentinel>`. `\FV@<Sentinel>` is not defined and is thus unsuitable for `\ifx` comparisons with tokens that may have been tokenized under an incorrect catcode regime and thus are undefined. `\FV@Sentinel` is defined, and its definition is resistant against accidental collisions.

```
388 \gdef\FV@VDetok@ScanGroup#1#{%
389   \FV@VDetok@ScanToken#1\FV@Sentinel
390   \FV@VDetok@ScanGroup@i}
```

`\FV@VDetok@ScanGroup@i` The braces from the group are stripped during reading #1. Proceed based on whether the group is empty. If the group is not empty, `{}` must be inserted to protect #1 in case it is a group, and the new sentinel sequence `\FV@<Sentinel>^^C` is added for the group contents. `\FV@<Sentinel>` cannot be used as a sentinel for the group contents, because if this is the sentinel group `{\FV@<Sentinel>}`, then #1 is `\FV@<Sentinel>`.

```
391 \gdef\FV@VDetok@ScanGroup@i#1{%
392   \if\relax\detokenize{#1}\relax
393     \expandafter\@firstoftwo
394   \else
395     \expandafter\@secondoftwo
396   \fi
397   {\FV@VDetok@ScanEmptyGroup}%
398   {\FV@VDetok@ScanGroup@ii{ }#1\FV@<Sentinel>^^C}}
```

`\FV@VDetok@ScanEmptyGroup` Insert `{}` to handle the empty group, then continue group scanning.

```
399 \begingroup
400 \catcode`\(=1
401 \catcode`\)=2
402 \catcode`\{=12
403 \catcode`\}=12
404 \gdef\FV@VDetok@ScanEmptyGroup({}\FV@VDetok@ScanGroup)
405 \endgroup
```

`\FV@VDetok@ScanGroup@ii` The group is not empty, so determine whether it contains `\FV@<Sentinel>` and thus is the sentinel group. The group contents are followed by the sentinel sequence `\FV@<Sentinel>^^C` inserted in `\FV@VDetok@ScanGroup@i`. This means that if #2 is empty, the group did not contain `\FV@<Sentinel>` and thus is not the sentinel group. Otherwise, #2 will be `\FV@<Sentinel>`.

If this is not the sentinel group, then the group contents must be scanned, with surrounding literal braces inserted. #1 already contains an inserted leading `{}` to protect groups; see `\FV@VDetok@ScanGroup@i`. A sentinel sequence `^^C\FV@<Sentinel>` is needed, though. Then group scanning must continue.

```
406 \begingroup
407 \catcode`\(=1
408 \catcode`\)=2
409 \catcode`\{=12
410 \catcode`\}=12
411 \gdef\FV@VDetok@ScanGroup@ii#1\FV@<Sentinel>#2^^C(%
412   \if\relax\detokenize{#2}\relax
413     \expandafter\@firstofone
```

```

414 \else
415 \expandafter\@gobble
416 \fi
417 ({\FV@VDetok@Scan#1^^C \FV@<Sentinel>}\FV@VDetok@ScanGroup))
418 \endgroup

```

`\FV@VDetok@ScanToken` Scan individual tokens. At this point, all spaces and groups have been handled, so this will only ever encounter individual tokens that can be iterated with a #1 argument. The sentinel for token scanning is `\FV@Sentinel`. This is the appropriate sentinel because `\ifx` comparisons are now safe (individual tokens) and `\FV@Sentinel` is defined. Processing individual detokenized tokens requires the same sentinel sequence as handling spaces, since it can produce them.

```

419 \gdef\FV@VDetok@ScanToken#1{%
420 \ifx\FV@Sentinel#1%
421 \expandafter\@gobble
422 \else
423 \expandafter\@firstofone
424 \fi
425 {\expandafter\FV@VDetok@ScanToken@i\detokenize{#1}^^C \FV@<Sentinel>}}

```

`\FV@VDetok@ScanToken@i` If #2 is empty, then there are no spaces in the detokenized token, so it is either an `\active` character other than the space, or a two-character sequence of the form `<backslash><symbol>` where the second character is not a space. Thus, #1 contains `<detokenized>^^C`. Otherwise, #1 contains `<detokenized_ without_ space>`, and #2 may be discarded since it contains `^^C.\FV@<Sentinel>`. (If the detokenized token contains a space, it is always at the end.)

```

426 \gdef\FV@VDetok@ScanToken@i#1 #2\FV@<Sentinel>{%
427 \if\relax\detokenize{#2}\relax
428 \expandafter\@firstoftwo
429 \else
430 \expandafter\@secondoftwo
431 \fi
432 {\FV@VDetok@ScanTokenNoSpace#1}%
433 {\FV@VDetok@ScanTokenWithSpace{#1}}

```

`\FV@VDetok@ScanTokenNoSpace` Strip `^^C` sentinel in reading, then insert character(s) and continue scanning.

```

434 \gdef\FV@VDetok@ScanTokenNoSpace#1^^C{#1\FV@VDetok@ScanToken}

```

`\FV@VDetok@ScanTokenWithSpace` Handle a token that when detokenized produces a space. If there is nothing left once the space is removed, this is the `\active` space. Otherwise, process further.

```

435 \gdef\FV@VDetok@ScanTokenWithSpace#1{%
436 \if\relax\detokenize{#1}\relax
437 \expandafter\@firstoftwo
438 \else
439 \expandafter\@secondoftwo
440 \fi
441 {\FV@VDetok@ScanTokenActiveSpace}%
442 {\FV@VDetok@ScanTokenWithSpace@i#1\FV@<Sentinel>}}

```

`\FV@VDetok@ScanTokenActiveSpace`

```

443 \begingroup
444 \catcode`\ =12%
445 \gdef\FV@VDetok@ScanTokenActiveSpace{ \FV@VDetok@ScanToken}%
446 \endgroup

```

`\FV@VDetok@ScanTokenWithSpace@i` If there is only one character left once the space is removed, this is the escaped space `_`. Otherwise, this is a command word that needs further processing.

```

447 \gdef\FV@VDetok@ScanTokenWithSpace@i#1#2\FV@<Sentinel>{%
448   \if\relax\detokenize{#2}\relax
449     \expandafter\@firstoftwo
450   \else
451     \expandafter\@secondoftwo
452   \fi
453   {\FV@VDetok@ScanTokenEscSpace{#1}}%
454   {\FV@VDetok@ScanTokenCW{#1#2}}}
```

`\FV@VDetok@ScanTokenEscSpace`

```

455 \begingroup
456 \catcode`\_ =12%
457 \gdef\FV@VDetok@ScanTokenEscSpace#1{#1 \FV@VDetok@ScanToken}%
458 \endgroup
```

`\FV@VDetok@ScanTokenCW` Process control words in a context-sensitive manner by looking ahead to the next token (`#2`). The lookahead must be reinserted into processing, hence the `\FV@VDetok@ScanToken#2`.

A control word will detokenize to a sequence of characters followed by a space. If the following token has catcode 11, then this space represents one or more space characters that must have been present in the original source, because otherwise the catcode 11 token would have become part of the control word's name. If the following token has another catcode, then it is impossible to determine whether a space was present, so assume that one was not.

```

459 \begingroup
460 \catcode`\_ =12%
461 \gdef\FV@VDetok@ScanTokenCW#1#2{%
462   \ifcat\noexpand#2a%
463     \expandafter\@firstoftwo%
464   \else%
465     \expandafter\@secondoftwo%
466   \fi%
467   {#1 \FV@VDetok@ScanToken#2}%
468   {#1\FV@VDetok@ScanToken#2}}%
469 \endgroup
```

Detokenize as if the original source were tokenized verbatim, then convert to PDF string

`\traPDFStringVerbatimDetokenize` This is identical to `\FVExtraVerbatimDetokenize`, except that the output is converted to a valid PDF string. Some spaces are represented with the octal escape `\040` to prevent adjacent spaces from being merged.

```

470 \gdef\FVExtraPDFStringVerbatimDetokenize#1{%
471   \FV@PDFStrVDetok@Scan{#1}^C \FV@<Sentinel>}
```

`\FV@PDFStrVDetok@Scan`

```

472 \gdef\FV@PDFStrVDetok@Scan#1 #2\FV@<Sentinel>{%
473   \if\relax\detokenize{#2}\relax
474     \expandafter\@firstoftwo
```

```

475 \else
476 \expandafter\@secondoftwo
477 \fi
478 {\FV@PDFStrVDetok@ScanEnd#1}%
479 {\FV@PDFStrVDetok@ScanCont{#1}{#2}}}

\FV@PDFStrVDetok@ScanEnd
480 \gdef\FV@PDFStrVDetok@ScanEnd#1^^C{%
481 \if\relax\detokenize{#1}\relax
482 \expandafter\@gobble
483 \else
484 \expandafter\@firstofone
485 \fi
486 {\expandafter\FV@PDFStrVDetok@ScanGroup\@gobble#1{\FV@<Sentinel>}}}

\FV@PDFStrVDetok@ScanCont
487 \begingroup
488 \catcode`\ =12%
489 \gdef\FV@PDFStrVDetok@ScanCont#1#2{%
490 \if\relax\detokenize{#1}\relax%
491 \expandafter\@gobble%
492 \else%
493 \expandafter\@firstofone%
494 \fi%
495 {\expandafter\FV@PDFStrVDetok@ScanGroup\@gobble#1{\FV@<Sentinel>}}%
496 %<-catcode 12 space
497 \FV@PDFStrVDetok@Scan{#2\FV@<Sentinel>}}%
498 \endgroup

\FV@PDFStrVDetok@ScanGroup
499 \gdef\FV@PDFStrVDetok@ScanGroup#1#{%
500 \FV@PDFStrVDetok@ScanToken#1\FV@Sentinel
501 \FV@PDFStrVDetok@ScanGroup@i}

\FV@PDFStrVDetok@ScanGroup@i
502 \gdef\FV@PDFStrVDetok@ScanGroup@i#1{%
503 \if\relax\detokenize{#1}\relax
504 \expandafter\@firstoftwo
505 \else
506 \expandafter\@secondoftwo
507 \fi
508 {\FV@PDFStrVDetok@ScanEmptyGroup}%
509 {\FV@PDFStrVDetok@ScanGroup@ii{#1\FV@<Sentinel>^^C}}

\FV@PDFStrVDetok@ScanEmptyGroup
510 \begingroup
511 \catcode`\ (=1
512 \catcode`\ )=2
513 \catcode`\ {=12
514 \catcode`\ }=12
515 \gdef\FV@PDFStrVDetok@ScanEmptyGroup({}\FV@PDFStrVDetok@ScanGroup)
516 \endgroup

```

```

\FV@PDFStrVDetok@ScanGroup@ii
517 \begingroup
518 \catcode`\ (=1
519 \catcode`\ )=2
520 \catcode`\ {=12
521 \catcode`\ }=12
522 \gdef\FV@PDFStrVDetok@ScanGroup@ii#1\FV@<Sentinel>#2^^C{%
523 \if\relax\detokenize{#2}\relax
524 \expandafter\@firstofone
525 \else
526 \expandafter\@gobble
527 \fi
528 ({\FV@PDFStrVDetok@Scan#1^^C \FV@<Sentinel>}\FV@PDFStrVDetok@ScanGroup)}
529 \endgroup

\FV@PDFStrVDetok@ScanToken
530 \gdef\FV@PDFStrVDetok@ScanToken#1{%
531 \ifx\FV@Sentinel#1%
532 \expandafter\@gobble
533 \else
534 \expandafter\@firstofone
535 \fi
536 {\expandafter\FV@PDFStrVDetok@ScanToken@i\detokenize{#1}^^C \FV@<Sentinel>}}

\FV@PDFStrVDetok@ScanToken@i
537 \gdef\FV@PDFStrVDetok@ScanToken@i#1 #2\FV@<Sentinel>{%
538 \if\relax\detokenize{#2}\relax
539 \expandafter\@firstoftwo
540 \else
541 \expandafter\@secondoftwo
542 \fi
543 {\FV@PDFStrVDetok@ScanTokenNoSpace#1}%
544 {\FV@PDFStrVDetok@ScanTokenWithSpace{#1}}}

\FV@PDFStrVDetok@ScanTokenNoSpace This is modified to use \FVExtraPDFStringEscapeChars.
545 \gdef\FV@PDFStrVDetok@ScanTokenNoSpace#1^^C{%
546 \FVExtraPDFStringEscapeChars{#1}\FV@PDFStrVDetok@ScanToken}

\FV@PDFStrVDetok@ScanTokenWithSpace
547 \gdef\FV@PDFStrVDetok@ScanTokenWithSpace#1{%
548 \if\relax\detokenize{#1}\relax
549 \expandafter\@firstoftwo
550 \else
551 \expandafter\@secondoftwo
552 \fi
553 {\FV@PDFStrVDetok@ScanTokenActiveSpace}%
554 {\FV@PDFStrVDetok@ScanTokenWithSpace@i#1\FV@<Sentinel>}}

\FV@PDFStrVDetok@ScanTokenActiveSpace This is modified to use \040 rather than a catcode 12 space.
555 \begingroup
556 \catcode`\ !=0\relax
557 \catcode`\ \ =12\relax
558 !gdef!\FV@PDFStrVDetok@ScanTokenActiveSpace{\040!\FV@PDFStrVDetok@ScanToken}%

```



```

559 !catcode`\=0!relax
560 \endgroup

```

`\StrVDetok@ScanTokenWithSpace@i` If there is only one character left once the space is removed, this is the escaped space `\.`. Otherwise, this is a command word that needs further processing.

```

561 \gdef\FV@PDFStrVDetok@ScanTokenWithSpace@i#1#2\FV@<Sentinel>{%
562   \if\relax\detokenize{#2}\relax
563     \expandafter\@firstoftwo
564   \else
565     \expandafter\@secondoftwo
566   \fi
567   {\FV@PDFStrVDetok@ScanTokenEscSpace{#1}}%
568   {\FV@PDFStrVDetok@ScanTokenCW{#1#2}}

```

`\PDFStrVDetok@ScanTokenEscSpace` This is modified to add `\FVExtraPDFStringEscapeChar` and use `\040` for the space, since a space could follow.

```

569 \begingroup
570 \catcode`\!=0!relax
571 \catcode`\=12!relax
572 !gdef!FV@PDFStrVDetok@ScanTokenEscSpace#1{%
573   !FVExtraPDFStringEscapeChar{#1}\040!FV@PDFStrVDetok@ScanToken}%
574 !catcode`\=0!relax
575 \endgroup

```

`\FV@PDFStrVDetok@ScanTokenCW` This is modified to add `\FVExtraPDFStringEscapeChars`.

```

576 \begingroup
577 \catcode`\ =12%
578 \gdef\FV@PDFStrVDetok@ScanTokenCW#1#2{%
579   \ifcat\noexpand#2a%
580     \expandafter\@firstoftwo%
581   \else%
582     \expandafter\@secondoftwo%
583   \fi%
584   {\FVExtraPDFStringEscapeChars{#1} \FV@PDFStrVDetok@ScanToken#2}%
585   {\FVExtraPDFStringEscapeChars{#1}\FV@PDFStrVDetok@ScanToken#2}}
586 \endgroup

```

Detokenize as if the original source were tokenized verbatim, except for backslash escapes of non-catcode 11 characters

`\ExtraEscapedVerbatimDetokenize` This is a variant of `\FVExtraVerbatimDetokenize` that treats character sequences of the form `\<char>` as escapes for `<char>`. It is primarily intended for making `\<symbol>` escapes for `<symbol>`, but allowing arbitrary escapes simplifies the default behavior and implementation. This is useful in constructing nearly verbatim commands that can be used inside other commands, because the backslash escapes allow for characters like `#` and `%`, as well as making possible multiple adjacent spaces via `\.`. It should be applied to arguments that are read verbatim insofar as is possible, except that the backslash `\` should have its normal meaning (catcode 0). Most of the implementation is identical to that for `\FVExtraVerbatimDetokenize`. Only the token processing requires modification to handle backslash escapes.

It is possible to restrict escapes to ASCII symbols and punctuation. See `\FVExtraDetokenizeREscVArg`. The disadvantage of restricting escapes is that it

prevents functioning in an expansion-only context (unless you want to use undefined macros as a means of raising errors). The advantage is that it eliminates ambiguity introduced by allowing arbitrary escapes. Backslash escapes of characters with catcode 11 (ASCII letters, [A-Za-z]) are typically not necessary, and introduce ambiguity because something like `\x` will gobble following spaces since it will be tokenized originally as a control word.

```
587 \gdef\FVExtraEscapedVerbatimDetokenize#1{%
588   \FV@EscVDetok@Scan{#1}^C \FV@<Sentinel>}
```

`\FV@EscVDetok@Scan`

```
589 \gdef\FV@EscVDetok@Scan#1 #2\FV@<Sentinel>{%
590   \if\relax\detokenize{#2}\relax
591     \expandafter\@firstoftwo
592   \else
593     \expandafter\@secondoftwo
594   \fi
595   {\FV@EscVDetok@ScanEnd#1}%
596   {\FV@EscVDetok@ScanCont{#1}{#2}}}
```

`\FV@EscVDetok@ScanEnd`

```
597 \gdef\FV@EscVDetok@ScanEnd#1^C{%
598   \if\relax\detokenize{#1}\relax
599     \expandafter\@gobble
600   \else
601     \expandafter\@firstofone
602   \fi
603   {\expandafter\FV@EscVDetok@ScanGroup\@gobble#1{\FV@<Sentinel>}}}
```

`\FV@EscVDetok@ScanCont`

```
604 \begingroup
605 \catcode` \ =12%
606 \gdef\FV@EscVDetok@ScanCont#1#2{%
607   \if\relax\detokenize{#1}\relax%
608   \expandafter\@gobble%
609   \else%
610   \expandafter\@firstofone%
611   \fi%
612   {\expandafter\FV@EscVDetok@ScanGroup\@gobble#1{\FV@<Sentinel>}}%
613   %<-catcode 12 space
614   \FV@EscVDetok@Scan{#2}\FV@<Sentinel>}%
615 \endgroup
```

`\FV@EscVDetok@ScanGroup`

```
616 \gdef\FV@EscVDetok@ScanGroup#1#{%
617   \FV@EscVDetok@ScanToken#1\FV@Sentinel
618   \FV@EscVDetok@ScanGroup@i}
```

`\FV@EscVDetok@ScanGroup@i`

```
619 \gdef\FV@EscVDetok@ScanGroup@i#1{%
620   \if\relax\detokenize{#1}\relax
621     \expandafter\@firstoftwo
622   \else
623     \expandafter\@secondoftwo
```

```

624 \fi
625 {\FV@EscVDetok@ScanEmptyGroup}%
626 {\FV@EscVDetok@ScanGroup@ii{ }#1\FV@<Sentinel>^^C}}

```

\FV@EscVDetok@ScanEmptyGroup

```

627 \begingroup
628 \catcode`\ (=1
629 \catcode`\ )=2
630 \catcode`\ {=12
631 \catcode`\ }=12
632 \gdef\FV@EscVDetok@ScanEmptyGroup({}\FV@EscVDetok@ScanGroup)
633 \endgroup

```

\FV@EscVDetok@ScanGroup@ii

```

634 \begingroup
635 \catcode`\ (=1
636 \catcode`\ )=2
637 \catcode`\ {=12
638 \catcode`\ }=12
639 \gdef\FV@EscVDetok@ScanGroup@ii#1\FV@<Sentinel>#2^^C(%
640 \if\relax\detokenize{#2}\relax
641 \expandafter\@firstofone
642 \else
643 \expandafter\@gobble
644 \fi
645 ({\FV@EscVDetok@Scan#1^^C \FV@<Sentinel>}\FV@EscVDetok@ScanGroup))
646 \endgroup

```

\FV@EscVDetok@ScanToken

```

647 \gdef\FV@EscVDetok@ScanToken#1{%
648 \ifx\FV@Sentinel#1%
649 \expandafter\@gobble
650 \else
651 \expandafter\@firstofone
652 \fi
653 {\expandafter\FV@EscVDetok@ScanToken@i\detokenize{#1}^^C \FV@<Sentinel>}}

```

\FV@EscVDetok@ScanToken@i

```

654 \gdef\FV@EscVDetok@ScanToken@i#1 #2\FV@<Sentinel>{%
655 \if\relax\detokenize{#2}\relax
656 \expandafter\@firstoftwo
657 \else
658 \expandafter\@secondoftwo
659 \fi
660 {\FV@EscVDetok@ScanTokenNoSpace#1}%
661 {\FV@EscVDetok@ScanTokenWithSpace{#1}}}

```

Parallel implementations, with a restricted option Starting here, there are alternate macros for restricting escapes to ASCII punctuation and symbols. These alternates have names of the form \FV@REscVDetok@<name>. They are used in \FVExtraDetokenizeREscVArg. The alternate \FV@REscVDetok@<name> macros replace invalid escape sequences with the undefined \FV@<InvalidEscape>, which is later scanned for with a delimited macro.

`\FV@EscVDetok@ScanTokenNoSpace` This was modified from `\FV@VDetok@ScanTokenNoSpace` to discard the first character of multi-character sequences (that would be the backslash `\`).

```
662 \gdef\FV@EscVDetok@ScanTokenNoSpace#1#2^^C{%
663   \if\relax\detokenize{#2}\relax
664     \expandafter\@firstoftwo
665   \else
666     \expandafter\@secondoftwo
667   \fi
668   {#1\FV@EscVDetok@ScanToken}%
669   {#2\FV@EscVDetok@ScanToken}}
```

`\FV@REscVDetok@ScanTokenNoSpace`

```
670 \gdef\FV@REscVDetok@ScanTokenNoSpace#1#2^^C{%
671   \if\relax\detokenize{#2}\relax
672     \expandafter\@firstoftwo
673   \else
674     \expandafter\@secondoftwo
675   \fi
676   {#1\FV@EscVDetok@ScanToken}%
677   {\ifcsname FV@Special:\detokenize{#2}\endcsname#2\else\noexpand\FV@<InvalidEscape>\fi
678   \FV@EscVDetok@ScanToken}}
```

`\FV@EscVDetok@ScanTokenWithSpace`

```
679 \gdef\FV@EscVDetok@ScanTokenWithSpace#1{%
680   \if\relax\detokenize{#1}\relax
681     \expandafter\@firstoftwo
682   \else
683     \expandafter\@secondoftwo
684   \fi
685   {\FV@EscVDetok@ScanTokenActiveSpace}%
686   {\FV@EscVDetok@ScanTokenWithSpace@i#1\FV@<Sentinel>}}
```

`\FV@EscVDetok@ScanTokenActiveSpace`

```
687 \begingroup
688 \catcode`\ =12%
689 \gdef\FV@EscVDetok@ScanTokenActiveSpace{ \FV@EscVDetok@ScanToken}%
690 \endgroup
```

`\FV@EscVDetok@ScanTokenWithSpace@i` If there is only one character left once the space is removed, this is the escaped space `\.`. Otherwise, this is a command word. A command word is passed on so as to keep the backslash and letters separate.

```
691 \gdef\FV@EscVDetok@ScanTokenWithSpace@i#1#2\FV@<Sentinel>{%
692   \if\relax\detokenize{#2}\relax
693     \expandafter\@firstoftwo
694   \else
695     \expandafter\@secondoftwo
696   \fi
697   {\FV@EscVDetok@ScanTokenEscSpace{#1}}%
698   {\FV@EscVDetok@ScanTokenCW{#1}{#2}}}
```

`\FV@REscVDetok@ScanTokenWithSpace@i`

```
699 \gdef\FV@REscVDetok@ScanTokenWithSpace@i#1#2\FV@<Sentinel>{%
700   \if\relax\detokenize{#2}\relax
```

```

701 \expandafter\@firstoftwo
702 \else
703 \expandafter\@secondoftwo
704 \fi
705 {\FV@EscVDetok@ScanTokenEscSpace{#1}}%
706 {\noexpand\FV@<InvalidEscape>\FV@EscVDetok@ScanToken}}

```

`\FV@EscVDetok@ScanTokenEscSpace` This is modified to drop #1, which will be the backslash.

```

707 \begingroup
708 \catcode`\ =12%
709 \gdef\FV@EscVDetok@ScanTokenEscSpace#1{ \FV@EscVDetok@ScanToken}%
710 \endgroup

```

`\FV@EscVDetok@ScanTokenCW` This is modified to accept an additional argument, since the control word is now split into backslash plus letters.

```

711 \begingroup
712 \catcode`\ =12%
713 \gdef\FV@EscVDetok@ScanTokenCW#1#2#3{%
714 \ifcat\noexpand#2a%
715 \expandafter\@firstoftwo%
716 \else%
717 \expandafter\@secondoftwo%
718 \fi%
719 {#2 \FV@EscVDetok@ScanToken#3}%
720 {#2\FV@EscVDetok@ScanToken#3}}
721 \endgroup

```

Detokenize as if the original source were tokenized verbatim, except for backslash escapes of non-catcode 11 characters, then convert to PDF string

`tringEscapedVerbatimDetokenize` This is identical to `\FVExtraEscapedVerbatimDetokenize`, except that the output is converted to a valid PDF string. All spaces are represented with the octal escape `\040` to prevent adjacent spaces from being merged. There is no alternate implementation for restricting escapes to ASCII symbols and punctuation. Typically, this would be used in an expansion-only context to create something like bookmarks, while `\FVExtraEscapedVerbatimDetokenize` (potentially with escape restrictions) would be used in parallel to generate whatever is actually typeset. Escape errors can be handled in generating what is typeset.

```

722 \gdef\FVExtraPDFStringEscapedVerbatimDetokenize#1{%
723 \FV@PDFStrEscVDetok@Scan{ }#1^~C \FV@<Sentinel>}

```

`\FV@PDFStrEscVDetok@Scan`

```

724 \gdef\FV@PDFStrEscVDetok@Scan#1 #2\FV@<Sentinel>{%
725 \if\relax\detokenize{#2}\relax
726 \expandafter\@firstoftwo
727 \else
728 \expandafter\@secondoftwo
729 \fi
730 {\FV@PDFStrEscVDetok@ScanEnd#1}%
731 {\FV@PDFStrEscVDetok@ScanCont{#1}{#2}}}

```

\FV@PDFStrEscVDetok@ScanEnd

```
732 \gdef\FV@PDFStrEscVDetok@ScanEnd#1^^C{%
733 \if\relax\detokenize{#1}\relax
734 \expandafter@gobble
735 \else
736 \expandafter@firstofone
737 \fi
738 {\expandafter\FV@PDFStrEscVDetok@ScanGroup@gobble#1{\FV@<Sentinel>}}}
```

\FV@PDFStrEscVDetok@ScanCont This is modified to use \040 for the space. In the unescaped case, using a normal space here is fine, but in the escaped case, the preceding or following token could be an escaped space.

```
739 \begingroup
740 \catcode`\!=0\relax
741 \catcode`\|=12\relax
742 !gdef!FV@PDFStrEscVDetok@ScanCont#1#2{%
743 !if!relax!detokenize{#1}!relax
744 !expandafter!@gobble
745 !else
746 !expandafter!@firstofone
747 !fi
748 {!expandafter!FV@PDFStrEscVDetok@ScanGroup!@gobble#1{\FV@<Sentinel>}}%
749 \040%<-space
750 !FV@PDFStrEscVDetok@Scan{ }#2!FV@<Sentinel>}%
751 !catcode`\|=0!relax
752 \endgroup
```

\FV@PDFStrEscVDetok@ScanGroup

```
753 \gdef\FV@PDFStrEscVDetok@ScanGroup#1#1#1{%
754 \FV@PDFStrEscVDetok@ScanToken#1\FV@Sentinel
755 \FV@PDFStrEscVDetok@ScanGroup@i}
```

FV@PDFStrEscVDetok@ScanGroup@i

```
756 \gdef\FV@PDFStrEscVDetok@ScanGroup@i#1{%
757 \if\relax\detokenize{#1}\relax
758 \expandafter@firstoftwo
759 \else
760 \expandafter@secondoftwo
761 \fi
762 {\FV@PDFStrEscVDetok@ScanEmptyGroup}%
763 {\FV@PDFStrEscVDetok@ScanGroup@ii{ }#1\FV@<Sentinel>^^C}}
```

PDFStrEscVDetok@ScanEmptyGroup

```
764 \begingroup
765 \catcode`\(=1
766 \catcode`\)=2
767 \catcode`\{=12
768 \catcode`\}=12
769 \gdef\FV@PDFStrEscVDetok@ScanEmptyGroup({}\FV@PDFStrEscVDetok@ScanGroup)
770 \endgroup
```

\FV@PDFStrEscVDetok@ScanGroup@ii

```
771 \begingroup
```

```

772 \catcode`\ (=1
773 \catcode`\ )=2
774 \catcode`\{=12
775 \catcode`\}=12
776 \gdef\FV@PDFStrEscVDetok@ScanGroup@ii#1\FV@<Sentinel>#2^^C{%
777 \if\relax\detokenize{#2}\relax
778 \expandafter\@firstofone
779 \else
780 \expandafter\@gobble
781 \fi
782 ({\FV@PDFStrEscVDetok@Scan#1^^C \FV@<Sentinel>}\FV@PDFStrEscVDetok@ScanGroup))
783 \endgroup

```

\FV@PDFStrEscVDetok@ScanToken

```

784 \gdef\FV@PDFStrEscVDetok@ScanToken#1{%
785 \ifx\FV@Sentinel#1%
786 \expandafter\@gobble
787 \else
788 \expandafter\@firstofone
789 \fi
790 {\expandafter\FV@PDFStrEscVDetok@ScanToken@i\detokenize{#1}^^C \FV@<Sentinel>}}

```

FV@PDFStrEscVDetok@ScanToken@i

```

791 \gdef\FV@PDFStrEscVDetok@ScanToken@i#1 #2\FV@<Sentinel>{%
792 \if\relax\detokenize{#2}\relax
793 \expandafter\@firstoftwo
794 \else
795 \expandafter\@secondoftwo
796 \fi
797 {\FV@PDFStrEscVDetok@ScanTokenNoSpace#1}%
798 {\FV@PDFStrEscVDetok@ScanTokenWithSpace{#1}}}

```

FV@PDFStrEscVDetok@ScanTokenNoSpace This was modified to add \FVExtraPDFStringEscapeChar

```

799 \gdef\FV@PDFStrEscVDetok@ScanTokenNoSpace#1#2^^C{%
800 \if\relax\detokenize{#2}\relax
801 \expandafter\@firstoftwo
802 \else
803 \expandafter\@secondoftwo
804 \fi
805 {\FVExtraPDFStringEscapeChar{#1}\FV@PDFStrEscVDetok@ScanToken}%
806 {\FVExtraPDFStringEscapeChar{#2}\FV@PDFStrEscVDetok@ScanToken}}

```

FV@PDFStrEscVDetok@ScanTokenWithSpace

```

807 \gdef\FV@PDFStrEscVDetok@ScanTokenWithSpace#1{%
808 \if\relax\detokenize{#1}\relax
809 \expandafter\@firstoftwo
810 \else
811 \expandafter\@secondoftwo
812 \fi
813 {\FV@PDFStrEscVDetok@ScanTokenActiveSpace}%
814 {\FV@PDFStrEscVDetok@ScanTokenWithSpace@i#1\FV@<Sentinel>}}

```

FV@PDFStrEscVDetok@ScanTokenActiveSpace This is modified to use \040 for the space.

```

815 \begingroup
816 \catcode`\!=0\relax
817 \catcode`\=12\relax
818 !gdef\FV@PDFStrEscVDetok@ScanTokenActiveSpace{\040!FV@PDFStrEscVDetok@ScanToken}%
819 !catcode`\=0!relax
820 \endgroup

```

EscVDetok@ScanTokenWithSpace@i

```

821 \gdef\FV@PDFStrEscVDetok@ScanTokenWithSpace@i#1#2\FV@<Sentinel>{%
822 \if\relax\detokenize{#2}\relax
823 \expandafter\@firstoftwo
824 \else
825 \expandafter\@secondoftwo
826 \fi
827 {\FV@PDFStrEscVDetok@ScanTokenEscSpace{#1}}%
828 {\FV@PDFStrEscVDetok@ScanTokenCW{#1}{#2}}

```

StrEscVDetok@ScanTokenEscSpace This is modified to drop #1, which will be the backslash, and use \040 for the space.

```

829 \begingroup
830 \catcode`\!=0\relax
831 \catcode`\=12\relax
832 !gdef\FV@PDFStrEscVDetok@ScanTokenEscSpace#1{\040!FV@PDFStrEscVDetok@ScanToken}
833 !catcode`\=0!relax
834 \endgroup

```

FV@PDFStrEscVDetok@ScanTokenCW This is modified to use \FVExtraPDFStringEscapeChars.

```

835 \begingroup
836 \catcode`\ =12%
837 \gdef\FV@PDFStrEscVDetok@ScanTokenCW#1#2#3{%
838 \ifcat\noexpand#2a%
839 \expandafter\@firstoftwo%
840 \else%
841 \expandafter\@secondoftwo%
842 \fi%
843 {\FVExtraPDFStringEscapeChars{#2} \FV@PDFStrEscVDetok@ScanToken#3}%
844 {\FVExtraPDFStringEscapeChars{#2}\FV@PDFStrEscVDetok@ScanToken#3}}
845 \endgroup

```

Detokenization wrappers

`\FVExtraDetokenizeVArg` Detokenize a verbatim argument read by `\FVExtraReadVArg`. This is a wrapper around `\FVExtraVerbatimDetokenize` that adds some additional safety by ensuring `^^C` is `\active` with an appropriate definition, at the cost of not working in an expansion-only context. This tradeoff isn't an issue when working with `\FVExtraReadVArg`, because it has the same expansion limitations.

```

846 \gdef\FVExtraDetokenizeVArg#1#2{%
847 \begingroup
848 \catcode`^^C=\active
849 \let^^C\FV@Sentinel
850 \edef\FV@Tmp{\FVExtraVerbatimDetokenize{#2}}%
851 \expandafter\FV@DetokenizeVArg@i\expandafter{\FV@Tmp}{#1}}

```



```

852 \gdef\FV@DetokenizeVArg@i#1#2{%
853   \endgroup
854   #2{#1}}

```

`\FVExtraDetokenizeEscVArg` This is the same as `\FVExtraDetokenizeVArg`, except it is intended to work with `\FVExtraReadEscVArg` by using `\FVExtraEscapedVerbatimDetokenize`.

```

855 \gdef\FVExtraDetokenizeEscVArg#1#2{%
856   \begingroup
857   \catcode`\^^C=\active
858   \let^^C\FV@Sentinel
859   \edef\FV@Tmp{\FVExtraEscapedVerbatimDetokenize{#2}}%
860   \expandafter\FV@DetokenizeVArg@i\expandafter{\FV@Tmp}{#1}}

```

`\FVExtraDetokenizeREscVArg`

```

861 \gdef\FVExtraDetokenizeREscVArg#1#2{%
862   \begingroup
863   \catcode`\^^C=\active
864   \let^^C\FV@Sentinel
865   \let\FV@EscVDetok@ScanTokenNoSpace\FV@REscVDetok@ScanTokenNoSpace
866   \let\FV@EscVDetok@ScanTokenWithSpace@i\FV@REscVDetok@ScanTokenWithSpace@i
867   \edef\FV@Tmp{\FVExtraEscapedVerbatimDetokenize{#2}}%
868   \expandafter\FV@DetokenizeREscVArg@InvalidEscapeCheck\FV@Tmp\FV@<InvalidEscape>\FV@<Sentinel>{#1}}
869   \expandafter\FV@DetokenizeVArg@i\expandafter{\FV@Tmp}{#1}}
870 \gdef\FV@DetokenizeREscVArg@InvalidEscapeCheck#1\FV@<InvalidEscape>#2\FV@<Sentinel>{%
871   \if\relax\detokenize{#2}\relax
872     \expandafter\@gobble
873   \else
874     \expandafter\@firstofone
875   \fi
876   {\PackageError{fvextra}%
877    [Invalid backslash escape; only escape ASCII symbols and punctuation]%
878    {Only use \@backslashchar <char> for ASCII symbols and punctuation}}

```

End catcodes for this subsection:

```
879 \endgroup
```

12.4.6 Retokenizing detokenized arguments

`\FV@RetokVArg@Read` Read all tokens up to `\active ^^C^^M`, then save them in a macro for further use. This is used to read tokens inside `\scantokens` during retokenization. The `\endgroup` disables catcode modifications that will have been put in place for the reading process, including making `^^C` and `^^M` `\active`.

```

880 \begingroup
881 \catcode`\^^C=\active%
882 \catcode`\^^M=\active%
883 \gdef\FV@RetokVArg@Read#1^^C^^M{%
884   \endgroup%
885   \def\FV@TmpRetoked{#1}}%
886 \endgroup

```

`\FVExtraRetokenizeVArg` This retokenizes the detokenized output of something like `\FVExtraVerbatimDetokenize` or `\FVExtraDetokenizeVArg`. `#1` is a macro that receives the output, `#2` sets catcodes but includes no `\begingroup` or `\endgroup`, and `#3` is the detokenized

characters. `\FV@RetokVArg@Read` contains an `\endgroup` that returns catcodes to their prior state.

This is a somewhat atypical use of `\scantokens`. There is no `\everyeof{\noexpand}` to handle the end-of-file marker, and no `\endlinechar=-1` to ignore the end-of-line token so that it does not become a space. Rather, the end-of-line `^^M` is made `\active` and used as a delimiter by `\FV@RetokVArg@Read`, which reads characters under the new catcode regime, then stores them unexpanded in `\FV@TmpRetoked`.

Inside `\scantokens` is `^^B#3^^C`. This becomes `^^B#3^^C^^M` once `\scantokens` inserts the end-of-line token. `^^B` is `\let` to `\FV@RetokVArg@Read`, rather than using `\FV@RetokVArg@Read` directly, because `\scantokens` acts as a `\write` followed by `\input`. That means that a command word like `\FV@RetokVArg@Read` will have a space inserted after it, while an `\active` character like `^^B` will not. Using `^^B` is a way to avoid needing to remove this space; it is simpler not to handle the scenario where `\FV@RetokVArg@Read` introduces a space and the detokenized characters also start with a space. The `^^C` is needed because trailing spaces on a line are automatically stripped, so a non-space character must be part of the delimiting token sequence.

```

887 \begingroup
888 \catcode`^^B=\active
889 \catcode`^^C=\active
890 \gdef\FVExtraRetokenizeVArg#1#2#3{%
891   \begingroup
892   #2%
893   \catcode`^^B=\active
894   \catcode`^^C=\active
895   \catcode`^^M=\active
896   \let^^B\FV@RetokVArg@Read
897   \let^^C\@empty
898   \FV@DefEOLEmpty
899   \scantokens{^^B#3^^C}%
900   \expandafter\FV@RetokenizeVArg@i\expandafter{\FV@TmpRetoked}{#1}}%
901 \gdef\FV@RetokenizeVArg@i#1#2{%
902   #2{#1}}
903 \endgroup

```

12.5 Hooks

`\FV@FormattingPrep@PreHook` These are hooks for extending `\FV@FormattingPrep`. `\FV@FormattingPrep` is inside a group, before the beginning of processing, so it is a good place to add extension code. These hooks are used for such things as tweaking math mode behavior and preparing for `breakbefore` and `breakafter`. The `PreHook` should typically be used, unless `fancyvrb`'s font settings, whitespace setup, and active character definitions are needed for extension code.

```

904 \let\FV@FormattingPrep@PreHook\@empty
905 \let\FV@FormattingPrep@PostHook\@empty
906 \expandafter\def\expandafter\FV@FormattingPrep\expandafter{%
907   \expandafter\FV@FormattingPrep@PreHook\FV@FormattingPrep\FV@FormattingPrep@PostHook}

```

`\FV@PygmentsHook` This is a hook for turning on Pygments-related features for packages like `minted` and `pythontex` (section 12.13). It needs to be the first thing in

\FV@FormattingPrep@PreHook, since it will potentially affect some of the later things in the hook. It is activated by \VerbatimPygments.

```
908 \let\FV@PygmentsHook\relax
909 \g@addto@macro\FV@FormattingPrep@PreHook{\FV@PygmentsHook}
```

12.6 Escaped characters

\FV@EscChars Define versions of common escaped characters that reduce to raw characters. This is useful, for example, when working with text that is almost verbatim, but was captured in such a way that some escapes were unavoidable.

```
910 \edef\FV@hashchar{\string#}
911 \edef\FV@dollarchar{\string$}
912 \edef\FV@ampchar{\string&}
913 \edef\FV@underscorechar{\string_}
914 \edef\FV@caretchar{\string^}
915 \edef\FV@tildechar{\string~}
916 \edef\FV@leftsquarebracket{\string[]
917 \edef\FV@rightsquarebracket{\string]}
918 \edef\FV@commachar{\string,}
919 \newcommand{\FV@EscChars}{%
920   \let#\FV@hashchar
921   \let%\FV@percentchar
922   \let{\FV@charlb
923   \let}\FV@charrb
924   \let$\FV@dollarchar
925   \let&\FV@ampchar
926   \let_\FV@underscorechar
927   \let^\FV@caretchar
928   \let\\\FV@backslashchar
929   \let~\FV@tildechar
930   \let~\FV@tildechar
931   \let[\FV@leftsquarebracket
932   \let]\FV@rightsquarebracket
933   \let\,\FV@commachar
934 } %$ <- highlighting
```

12.7 Inline-only options

Create \fvinlineset for inline-only options. Note that this only applies to new or reimplemented inline commands that use \FV@UseInlineKeyValues.

\FV@InlineKeyValues

```
935 \def\FV@InlineKeyValues{}
```

\fvinlineset

```
936 \def\fvinlineset#1{%
937   \expandafter\def\expandafter\FV@InlineKeyValues\expandafter{%
938     \FV@InlineKeyValues#1,}}}
```

\FV@UseInlineKeyValues

```
939 \def\FV@UseInlineKeyValues{%
940   \expandafter\fvset\expandafter{\FV@InlineKeyValues}}
```

12.8 Reimplementations

`fvextra` reimplements some `fancyvrb` internals. The patches in section 12.10 fix bugs, handle edge cases, and extend existing functionality in logical ways, while leaving default `fancyvrb` behavior largely unchanged. In contrast, reimplementations add features by changing existing behavior in significant ways. As a result, there is a boolean option `extra` that allows them to be disabled.

12.8.1 `extra` option

Boolean option that governs whether reimplemented commands and environments should be used, rather than the original definitions.

```
FV@extra
941 \newbool{FV@extra}

extra
942 \define@booleankey{FV}{extra}%
943 {\booltrue{FV@extra}}%
944 {\boolfalse{FV@extra}}
945 \fvset{extra=true}
```

12.8.2 `\FancyVerbFormatInline`

This allows customization of inline verbatim material. It is the inline equivalent of `\FancyVerbFormatLine` and `\FancyVerbFormatText`.

```
\FancyVerbFormatInline
946 \def\FancyVerbFormatInline#1{#1}
```

12.8.3 `\Verb`

`\Verb` is reimplemented so that it functions as well as possible when used within other commands.

`\verb` cannot be used inside other commands. The original `fancyvrb` implementation of `\Verb` does work inside other commands, but being inside other commands reduces its functionality since there is no attempt at retokenization. When used inside other commands, it essentially reduces to `\texttt`. `\Verb` also fails when the delimiting characters are active, since it assumes that the closing delimiting character will have catcode 12.

`fvextra`'s re-implemented `\Verb` uses `\scantokens` and careful consideration of catcodes to (mostly) remedy this. It also adds support for paired curly braces `{...}` as the delimiters for the verbatim argument, since this is often convenient when `\Verb` is used within another command. The original `\Verb` implementation is completely incompatible with curly braces being used as delimiters, so this doesn't affect backward compatibility.

The re-implemented `\Verb` is constructed with `\FVExtraRobustCommand` so that it will function correctly after being in an expansion-only context, so long as the argument is delimited with curly braces.

```
\Verb
947 \def\Verb{%
948   \FVExtraRobustCommand\RobustVerb\FVExtraUnexpandedReadStar0ArgBVar}
```

`\RobustVerb`

```
949 \protected\def\RobustVerb{\FV@Command}{Verb}}
950 \FVExtraPDFstringdefDisableCommands{%
951   \def\RobustVerb{}}
```

`\FVC@Verb@FV` Save the original fancyvrb definition of `\FVC@Verb`, so that the extra option can switch back to it.

```
952 \let\FVC@Verb@FV\FVC@Verb
```

`\FVC@Verb` Redefine `\FVC@Verb` so that it will adjust based on `extra`.

```
953 \def\FVC@Verb{%
954   \begingroup
955   \FV@UseInlineKeyValues\FV@UseKeyValues
956   \ifFV@extra
957     \expandafter\endgroup\expandafter\FVC@Verb@Extra
958   \else
959     \expandafter\endgroup\expandafter\FVC@Verb@FV
960   \fi}
```

`\FVC@Verb@Extra` `fvextra` reimplement of `\FVC@Verb`.

When used after expansion, there is a check for valid delimiters, curly braces. If incorrect delimiters are used, and there are no following curly braces, then the reader macro `\FVExtraUnexpandedReadStar0ArgBVar` will give an error about unmatched braces. However, if incorrect delimiters are used, and there *are* following braces in a subsequent command, then this error will be triggered, preventing interference with the following command by the reader macro.

```
961 \def\FVC@Verb@Extra{%
962   \ifbool{FVExtraRobustCommandExpanded}%
963     {\ifnextchar\bgroup
964       {\FVC@Verb@Extra@i}%
965       {\PackageError{fvextra}%
966         {string\Verb\space delimiters must be paired curly braces in this context}%
967         {Use curly braces as delimiters}}}%
968     {\FVC@Verb@Extra@i}}
```

`\FVC@Verb@Extra@i`

```
969 \def\FVC@Verb@Extra@i{%
970   \begingroup
971   \FVExtraReadVArg{%
972     \FV@UseInlineKeyValues\FV@UseKeyValues\FV@FormattingPrep
973     \FVExtraDetokenizeVArg{%
974       \FVExtraRetokenizeVArg{\FVC@Verb@Extra@ii}{\FV@CatCodes}}}
```

`\FVC@Verb@Extra@ii`

```
975 \def\FVC@Verb@Extra@ii#1{%
976   \ifFV@breaklines
977     \expandafter\@firstoftwo
978   \else
979     \expandafter\@secondoftwo
980   \fi
981   {\FV@InsertBreaks{\FancyVerbFormatInline}{#1}}%
982   {\mbox{#1}}%
983   \endgroup}
```

12.8.4 `\SaveVerb`

This is reimplemented, following `\Verb` as a template, so that both `\Verb` and `\SaveVerb` are using the same reading and tokenization macros. This also adds support for `\fvlineset`. Since the definition in `fancyvrb` is

```
%\def\SaveVerb{\FV@Command}{\SaveVerb}}
%
```

only the internal macros need to be reimplemented.

```
\FVC@SaveVerb@FV
```

```
984 \let\FVC@SaveVerb@FV\FVC@SaveVerb
```

```
\FVC@SaveVerb
```

```
985 \def\FVC@SaveVerb{%
986   \begingroup
987   \FV@UseInlineKeyValues\FV@UseKeyValues
988   \ifFV@extra
989     \expandafter\endgroup\expandafter\FVC@SaveVerb@Extra
990   \else
991     \expandafter\endgroup\expandafter\FVC@SaveVerb@FV
992   \fi}
```

`\FVC@SaveVerb@Extra` In addition to following the `\Verb` implementation, this saves a raw version of the text to allow `retokenize` with `\UseVerb`. The raw version is also used for conversion to a PDF string if that is needed.

```
993 \def\FVC@SaveVerb@Extra#1{%
994   \@namedef{FV@SV#1}{}%
995   \@namedef{FV@SVRaw#1}{}%
996   \begingroup
997   \FVExtraReadVArg{%
998     \FVC@SaveVerb@Extra@i{#1}}
```

```
\FVC@SaveVerb@Extra@i
```

```
999 \def\FVC@SaveVerb@Extra@i#1#2{%
1000   \FV@UseInlineKeyValues\FV@UseKeyValues\FV@FormattingPrep
1001   \FVExtraDetokenizeVArg{%
1002     \FVExtraRetokenizeVArg{\FVC@SaveVerb@Extra@ii{#1}{#2}}{\FV@CatCodes}}{#2}}
```

```
\FVC@SaveVerb@Extra@ii
```

```
1003 \def\FVC@SaveVerb@Extra@ii#1#2#3{%
1004   \global\let\FV@AfterSave\FancyVerbAfterSave
1005   \endgroup
1006   \@namedef{FV@SV#1}{#3}%
1007   \@namedef{FV@SVRaw#1}{#2}%
1008   \FV@AfterSave}%
```

12.8.5 `\UseVerb`

This adds support for `\fvlineset` and line breaking. It also adds movable argument and PDF string support. A new option `retokenize` is defined that determines whether the typeset output is based on the `commandchars` and `codes` in place when `\SaveVerb` was used (default), or is retokenized under current `commandchars` and `codes`.

FV@retokenize Whether \UseVerb uses saved verbatim with its original tokenization, or retokenizes
retokenize under current commandchars and codes.

```
1009 \newbool{FV@retokenize}
1010 \define@booleankey{FV}{retokenize}%
1011 {\booltrue{FV@retokenize}}{\boolfalse{FV@retokenize}}
```

\UseVerb

```
1012 \def\UseVerb{%
1013   \FVExtraRobustCommand\RobustUseVerb\FVExtraUseVerbUnexpandedReadStarOArgMArg}
```

\RobustUseVerb

```
1014 \protected\def\RobustUseVerb{\FV@Command}{\UseVerb}}
1015 \FVExtrapdfstringdefDisableCommands{%
1016   \def\RobustUseVerb{}}
```

\FVC@UseVerb@FV

```
1017 \let\FVC@UseVerb@FV\FVC@UseVerb
```

\FVC@UseVerb

```
1018 \def\FVC@UseVerb{%
1019   \begingroup
1020   \FV@UseInlineKeyValues\FV@UseKeyValues
1021   \ifFV@extra
1022     \expandafter\endgroup\expandafter\FVC@UseVerb@Extra
1023   \else
1024     \expandafter\endgroup\expandafter\FVC@UseVerb@FV
1025   \fi}
```

\FVC@UseVerb@Extra

```
1026 \def\FVC@UseVerb@Extra#1{%
1027   \@ifundefined{FV@SV@#1}%
1028   {\FV@Error{Short verbatim text never saved to name `#1'}\FV@eha}%
1029   {\begingroup
1030     \FV@UseInlineKeyValues\FV@UseKeyValues\FV@FormattingPrep
1031     \ifbool{FV@retokenize}%
1032     {\expandafter\let\expandafter\FV@Tmp\csname FV@SVRaw@#1\endcsname
1033      \expandafter\FV@UseVerb@Extra@Retok\expandafter{\FV@Tmp}}%
1034     {\expandafter\let\expandafter\FV@Tmp\csname FV@SV@#1\endcsname
1035      \expandafter\FV@UseVerb@Extra\expandafter{\FV@Tmp}}}}
```

\FV@UseVerb@Extra@Retok

```
1036 \def\FV@UseVerb@Extra@Retok#1{%
1037   \FVExtraDetokenizeVArg{%
1038     \FVExtraRetokenizeVArg{\FV@UseVerb@Extra}{\FV@CatCodes}}{#1}}
```

\FV@UseVerb@Extra

```
1039 \def\FV@UseVerb@Extra#1{%
1040   \ifFV@breaklines
1041     \expandafter\@firstoftwo
1042   \else
1043     \expandafter\@secondoftwo
1044   \fi
1045   {\FV@InsertBreaks{\FancyVerbFormatInline}{#1}}%
1046   {\mbox{#1}}%
1047   \endgroup}
```

12.9 New commands and environments

12.9.1 `\EscVerb`

This is a variant of `\Verb` in which backslash escapes of the form `\<char>` are used for `<char>`. Backslash escapes are *only* permitted for printable, non-alphanumeric ASCII characters. The argument is read under a normal catcode regime, so any characters that cannot be read under normal catcodes must always be escaped, and the argument must always be delimited by curly braces. This ensures that `\EscVerb` behaves identically whether or not it is used inside another command.

`\EscVerb` is constructed with `\FVExtraRobustCommand` so that it will function correctly after being in an expansion-only context.

`\EscVerb` Note that while the typeset mandatory argument will be read under normal catcodes, the reader macro for expansion is `\FVExtraUnexpandedReadStar0ArgBEscVArg`. This reflects how the argument will be typeset.

```
1048 \def\EscVerb{%
1049   \FVExtraRobustCommand\RobustEscVerb\FVExtraUnexpandedReadStar0ArgBEscVArg}
```

`\RobustEscVerb`

```
1050 \protected\def\RobustEscVerb{\FV@Command}{\EscVerb}}
1051 \FVExtraPDFstringdefDisableCommands{%
1052   \def\RobustEscVerb{}}
```

`\FVC@EscVerb` Delimiting with curly braces is required, so that the command will always behave the same whether or not it has been through expansion.

```
1053 \def\FVC@EscVerb{%
1054   \@ifnextchar\bgroup
1055   {\FVC@EscVerb@i}%
1056   {\PackageError{fvextra}%
1057    {Invalid argument; argument must be delimited by paired curly braces}%
1058    {Delimit argument with curly braces}}}
```

`\FVC@EscVerb@i`

```
1059 \def\FVC@EscVerb@i#1{%
1060   \begingroup
1061   \FV@UseInlineKeyValues\FV@UseKeyValues\FV@FormattingPrep
1062   \FVExtraDetokenizeREscVArg{%
1063     \FVExtraRetokenizeVArg{\FVC@EscVerb@ii}{\FV@CatCodes}}{#1}}
```

`\FVC@EscVerb@ii`

```
1064 \def\FVC@EscVerb@ii#1{%
1065   \ifFV@breaklines
1066     \expandafter\@firstoftwo
1067   \else
1068     \expandafter\@secondoftwo
1069   \fi
1070   {\FV@InsertBreaks{\FancyVerbFormatInline}{#1}}%
1071   {\mbox{#1}}%
1072   \endgroup}
```


12.9.2 VerbEnv

Environment variant of `\Verb`. Depending on how this is used in the future, it may be worth improving error message and error recovery functionality, using techniques from `fancyvrb`.

```
\VerbEnv
1073 \def\VerbEnv{%
1074   \ifcsname @currenvir\endcsname
1075     \ifx@currenvir@empty
1076       \PackageError{fvextra}{VerbEnv is an environment}{VerbEnv is an environment}%
1077     \else
1078       \ifx@currenvir\relax
1079         \PackageError{fvextra}{VerbEnv is an environment}{VerbEnv is an environment}%
1080       \fi
1081     \fi
1082   \else
1083     \PackageError{fvextra}{VerbEnv is an environment}{VerbEnv is an environment}%
1084   \fi
1085   \VerbatimEnvironment
1086   \FVExtraRead0ArgBeforeVEnv{\expandafter\VerbEnv@i\expandafter{\FV@EnvironName}}
1087 \def\VerbEnv@i#1#2{%
1088   \begingroup
1089   \let\do\@makeother\FVExtraDoSpecials
1090   \catcode`\ =\active
1091   \catcode`\^I=\active
1092   \catcode`\^M=\active
1093   \VerbEnv@ii{#1}{#2}}
1094 \begingroup
1095 \catcode`\ !=0
1096 \catcode`\ <=1
1097 \catcode`\ >=2
1098 !catcode`\ !=12
1099 !catcode`\ {=12
1100 !catcode`\ }=12
1101 !catcode`\ ^M=!active%
1102 !gdef!VerbEnv@ii#1#2#3^^M<%
1103   !endgroup%
1104   !def!VerbEnv@CheckLine##1\end{#1}##2!FV@Sentinel<%
1105     !if!relax!detokenize<##2>!relax%
1106     !else%
1107       !PackageError{fvextra}<Missing environment contents><Missing environment contents>%
1108       !let!VerbEnv@iii!VerbEnv@iii@Error%
1109       !fi>%
1110     !VerbEnv@CheckLine#3\end{#1}!FV@Sentinel%
1111     !VerbEnv@iii<#1><#2><#3>>%
1112   !endgroup%
1113 \def\VerbEnv@iii@Error#1#2#3{}
1114 \def\VerbEnv@iii#1#2#3{%
1115   \begingroup
1116   \let\do\@makeother\FVExtraDoSpecials
1117   \catcode`\ =10\relax
1118   \catcode`\ ^M=\active
1119   \VerbEnv@iv{#1}{#2}{#3}}
```

```

1120 \begingroup
1121 \catcode`\!=0
1122 \catcode`\<=1
1123 \catcode`\>=2
1124 !catcode`\=12
1125 !catcode`\{=12
1126 !catcode`\}=12
1127 !catcode`\^^M=!active%
1128 !gdef!VerbEnv@iv#1#2#3#4^^M<%
1129 !endgroup%
1130 !def!VerbEnv@CheckEndDelim##1\end{#1}##2!FV@Sentinel<%
1131 !if!relax!detokenize<##2>!relax%
1132 !PackageError<fvextra><Missing end for environment !FV@EnvironName><Add environment en
1133 !let!VerbEnv@v!VerbEnv@v@Error%
1134 !else%
1135 !VerbEnv@CheckEndLeading##1!FV@Sentinel%
1136 !VerbEnv@CheckEndTrailing##2!FV@Sentinel%
1137 !fi>%
1138 !def!VerbEnv@CheckEndTrailing##1\end{#1}!FV@Sentinel<%
1139 !if!relax!detokenize<##1>!relax%
1140 !else%
1141 !PackageError<fvextra>%
1142 <Discarded text after end of environment !FV@EnvironName>%
1143 <Discarded text after end of environment !FV@EnvironName>%
1144 !let!VerbEnv@v!VerbEnv@v@Error%
1145 !fi>%
1146 !VerbEnv@CheckEndDelim#4\end{#1}!FV@Sentinel%
1147 !VerbEnv@v<#2><#3>>%
1148 !endgroup
1149 \def\VerbEnv@CheckEndLeading{%
1150 \FVExtra@ifnextcharAny\@sptoken%
1151 {\VerbEnv@CheckEndLeading@Continue}%
1152 {\ifx\@let@token\FV@Sentinel
1153 \expandafter\VerbEnv@CheckEndLeading@End
1154 \else
1155 \expandafter\VerbEnv@CheckEndLeading@EndError
1156 \fi}}
1157 \def\VerbEnv@CheckEndLeading@Continue#1{%
1158 \VerbEnv@CheckEndLeading}
1159 \def\VerbEnv@CheckEndLeading@End#1\FV@Sentinel{}
1160 \def\VerbEnv@CheckEndLeading@EndError{%
1161 \PackageError{fvextra}%
1162 {Discarded text before end of environment \FV@EnvironName}%
1163 {Discarded text before end of environment \FV@EnvironName}%
1164 \let\VerbEnv@v\VerbEnv@v@Error}
1165 \def\VerbEnv@v@Error#1#2{}
1166 \def\VerbEnv@v#1#2{%
1167 \Verb[#1]{#2}%
1168 \expandafter\end\expandafter{\FV@EnvironName}}

\endVerbEnv
1169 \def\endVerbEnv{\global\let\FV@EnvironName\relax}

```

12.9.3 VerbatimWrite

This environment writes its contents to a file verbatim. Differences from `fancyvrb`'s `VerbatimOut`:

- Multiple `VerbatimWrite` environments can write to the same file. The file is set via the `writefilehandle` option. This does mean that the user is responsible for creating a new file handle via `\newwrite` and then ideally invoking `\closeout` at the appropriate time.
- By default, text is really written verbatim. This is accomplished by a combination of setting `catcodes` to 12 (other) and `\detokenize`. This can be customized using the new `writer` option, which defines a macro that performs any processing on each line before writing it to file. By default, all `fancyvrb` options except for `VerbatimWrite`-specific options are ignored. This can be customized on a per-environment basis via environment optional arguments.

`writefilehandle` Set file handle for `VerbatimWrite`.

```
\FancyVerbWriteFileHandle 1170 \define@key{FV}{writefilehandle}{%
1171   \FV@SetWrite#1\FV@Sentinel}
1172 \def\FV@SetWrite#1#2\FV@Sentinel{%
1173   \let\FancyVerbWriteFileHandle\relax
1174   \if\relax\detokenize{#2}\relax
1175     \let\FancyVerbWriteFileHandle#1\relax
1176   \fi
1177   \ifx\FancyVerbWriteFileHandle\relax
1178     \PackageError{fvextra}%
1179       {Missing or invalid file handle for write}%
1180       {Need file handle from \string\newwrite}%
1181   \fi}
1182 \let\FancyVerbWriteFileHandle\relax
```

`writer` Define `writer` macro that processes each line before writing.

```
\FV@Writer 1183 \define@key{FV}{writer}{%
1184   \let\FV@Writer#1\relax}
1185 \def\FancyVerbDefaultWriter#1{%
1186   \immediate\write\FancyVerbWriteFileHandle{\detokenize{#1}}
1187   \fvset{writer=\FancyVerbDefaultWriter}}
```

`VerbatimWrite` The environment implementation follows standard `fancyvrb` environment style.

A special write counter is used to track line numbers while avoiding incrementing the regular counter that is used for typeset code. Some macros do nothing with the default `writer`, but are needed to enable `fancyvrb` options when a custom `writer` is used in conjunction with optional environment arguments. These include `\FancyVerbDefineActive`, `\FancyVerbFormatCom`, and `\FV@DefineTabOut`.

```
1188 \newcounter{FancyVerbWriteLine}
1189 \def\VerbatimWrite{%
1190   \FV@Environment
1191   {codes=,commandchars=none,commentchar=none,defineactive,%
1192     gobble=0,formatcom=,firstline,lastline}%
1193   {VerbatimWrite}}
1194 \def\FVB@VerbatimWrite{%
```

```

1195 \@bsphack
1196 \begingroup
1197 \setcounter{FancyVerbWriteLine}{0}%
1198 \let\c@FancyVerbLine\c@FancyVerbWriteLine
1199 \FV@UseKeyValues
1200 \FV@DefineWhiteSpace
1201 \def\FV@Space{\space}%
1202 \FV@DefineTabOut
1203 \let\FV@ProcessLine\FV@Writer
1204 \let\FV@FontScanPrep\relax
1205 \let\@noligs\relax
1206 \FancyVerbDefineActive
1207 \FancyVerbFormatCom
1208 \FV@Scan}
1209 \def\FVE@VerbatimWrite{%
1210 \endgroup
1211 \@esphack}
1212 \def\endVerbatimWrite{\FVE@VerbatimWrite}

```

12.9.4 VerbatimBuffer

This environment stores its contents verbatim in a “buffer,” a sequence of numbered macros each of which contains one line of the environment. The “buffered” lines can then be looped over for further processing or later use.

By default, all fancyvrb options except for `VerbatimBuffer`-specific options are ignored. This can be customized on a per-environment basis via environment optional arguments.

afterbuffer Macro that is inserted after the last line of the environment is buffered, immediately before the environment ends.

```

1213 \define@key{FV}{afterbuffer}{%
1214 \def\FV@afterbuffer{#1}}
1215 \fvset{afterbuffer=}

```

FancyVerbBufferIndex Current index in buffer during buffering. This is given a `\FancyVerb*` macro name since it may be accessed by the user in defining custom `bufferer`.

```

1216 \newcounter{FancyVerbBufferIndex}

```

bufferer This is the macro that adds lines to the buffer. The default is designed to create a truly verbatim buffer via `\detokenize`.

```

\FV@Bufferer
\FancyVerbDefaultBufferer
1217 \define@key{FV}{bufferer}{%
1218 \let\FV@Bufferer=#1\relax}
1219 \def\FancyVerbDefaultBufferer#1{%
1220 \expandafter\xdef\csname\FancyVerbBufferLineName\arabic{FancyVerbBufferIndex}\endcsname{%
1221 \detokenize{#1}}}
1222 \fvset{bufferer=\FancyVerbDefaultBufferer}

```

bufferlengthname Name of counter storing the length of the buffer.

```

\FV@bufferlengthname
1223 \define@key{FV}{bufferlengthname}{%
1224 \ifcsname c@#1\endcsname
1225 \else
1226 \newcounter{#1}%
1227 \fi

```

```

1228 \def\FV@bufferlengthname{#1}}
1229 \fvset{bufferlengthname=FancyVerbBufferLength}

```

bufferlinename Base name of buffer line macros. This is given a `\FancyVerb*` macro name since `\FancyVerbBufferLineName` it may be accessed by the user in defining custom `bufferer`.

```

1230 \define@key{FV}{bufferlinename}{%
1231 \def\FancyVerbBufferLineName{#1}}
1232 \fvset{bufferlinename=FancyVerbBufferLine}

```

buffername Shortcut for setting `bufferlengthname` and `bufferlinename`.

```

1233 \define@key{FV}{buffername}{%
1234 \fvset{bufferlengthname=#1length,bufferlinename=#1line}}

```

globalbuffer Whether buffer macros and the buffer length counter are defined globally.

```

FV@globalbuffer 1235 \newbool{FV@globalbuffer}
1236 \define@booleankey{FV}{globalbuffer}{%
1237 {\booltrue{FV@globalbuffer}}%
1238 {\boolfalse{FV@globalbuffer}}
1239 \fvset{globalbuffer=false}

```

VerbatimBuffer The environment implementation follows standard `fancyvrb` environment style.

A special buffer counter is used to track line numbers while avoiding incrementing the regular counter that is used for typeset code. Some macros do nothing with the default `bufferer`, but are needed to enable `fancyvrb` options when a custom `bufferer` is used in conjunction with optional environment arguments. These include `\FancyVerbDefineActive` and `\FancyVerbFormatCom`. Since counters are global, the exact location of the `\setcounter` commands at the end of the environment relative to `\begingroup... \endgroup` is not important.

```

1240 \newcounter{FancyVerbBufferLine}
1241 \newcounter{FV@oldbufferlength}
1242 \newbool{FV@globalbuffer@tmp}
1243 \let\FV@bufferlengthname@tmp\relax
1244 \let\FancyVerbBufferLineName@tmp\relax
1245 \let\FV@afterbuffer@tmp\relax
1246 \def\VerbatimBuffer{%
1247 \FV@Environment
1248 {codes=,commandchars=none,commentchar=none,defineactive,%
1249 gobble=0,formatcom=,firstline,lastline}%
1250 {VerbatimBuffer}}
1251 \def\FVB@VerbatimBuffer{%
1252 \@bsphack
1253 \begingroup
1254 \FV@UseKeyValues
1255 \setcounter{FancyVerbBufferLine}%
1256 {\expandafter\value\expandafter{\FV@bufferlengthname}}%
1257 \let\c@FancyVerbLine\c@FancyVerbBufferLine
1258 \setcounter{FancyVerbBufferIndex}%
1259 {\expandafter\value\expandafter{\FV@bufferlengthname}}%
1260 \ifbool{FV@globalbuffer}%
1261 {\global\booltrue{FV@globalbuffer@tmp}}%
1262 {\global\boolfalse{FV@globalbuffer@tmp}}%
1263 \setcounter{FV@oldbufferlength}%
1264 {\expandafter\value\expandafter{\FV@bufferlengthname}}%

```

```

1265 \global\let\FV@bufferlengthname@tmp\FV@bufferlengthname
1266 \global\let\FancyVerbBufferLineName@tmp\FancyVerbBufferLineName}%
1267 \global\let\FV@afterbuffer@tmp\FV@afterbuffer
1268 \FV@DefineWhiteSpace
1269 \def\FV@ProcessLine{\stepcounter{FancyVerbBufferIndex}\FV@Bufferer}%
1270 \let\FV@FontScanPrep\relax
1271 \let\@noligs\relax
1272 \FancyVerbDefineActive
1273 \FancyVerbFormatCom
1274 \FV@Scan}
1275 \def\FVE@VerbatimBuffer{%
1276 \expandafter\setcounter\expandafter{\FV@bufferlengthname}%
1277 {\value{FancyVerbBufferIndex}}%
1278 \setcounter{FancyVerbBufferIndex}{0}%
1279 \endgroup
1280 \@esphack
1281 \begingroup
1282 \FV@afterbuffer@tmp
1283 \global\let\FV@afterbuffer@tmp\relax
1284 \endgroup
1285 \ifbool{FV@globalbuffer@tmp}%
1286 {}%
1287 {\loop\unless\ifnum\expandafter\value\expandafter{\FV@bufferlengthname@tmp}=
1288 \value{FV@oldbufferlength}\relax
1289 \expandafter\global\expandafter\let\csname
1290 \FancyVerbBufferLineName@tmp
1291 \expandafter\arabic\expandafter{\FV@bufferlengthname@tmp}%
1292 \endcsname\FV@Undefined
1293 \expandafter\addtocounter\expandafter{\FV@bufferlengthname@tmp}{-1}%
1294 \repeat
1295 \global\let\FV@bufferlengthname@tmp\relax
1296 \global\let\FancyVerbBufferLineName@tmp\relax}}
1297 \def\endVerbatimBuffer{\FVE@VerbatimBuffer}

```

12.9.5 \VerbatimInsertBuffer

`\VerbatimInsertBuffer` This inserts an existing buffer created by `VerbatimBuffer` as a `Verbatim` environment. It customizes `Verbatim` internals to function with a buffer in a command context.

```

1298 \newcommand{\VerbatimInsertBuffer}[1][ ]{%
1299 \begingroup
1300 \def\FV@KeyValues{#1}%
1301 \def\FV@Scan{%
1302 \FV@CatCodes
1303 \xdef\FV@EnvironName{Verbatim}%
1304 \ifnum\expandafter\value\expandafter{\FV@bufferlengthname}=\z@\relax
1305 \PackageError{fvextra}%
1306 {Buffer length counter \FV@bufferlengthname\space is invalid or zero}%
1307 {}%
1308 \let\FV@GetLine\relax
1309 \fi
1310 \FV@GetLine}%
1311 \let\FV@CheckScan\relax
1312 \setcounter{FancyVerbBufferIndex}{1}%

```

```

1313 \def\VerbatimInsertBuffer@def@FV@Line##1{%
1314   \FVExtraRetokenizeVArg{\def\FV@Line}{-}{##1}}
1315 \def\FancyVerbGetLine{%
1316   \ifnum\value{FancyVerbBufferIndex}>%
1317     \expandafter\value\expandafter{\FV@bufferlengthname}\relax
1318     \global\let\FV@EnvironName\relax
1319     \let\next\relax
1320   \else
1321     \ifcsname\FancyVerbBufferLineName\arabic{FancyVerbBufferIndex}\endcsname
1322       \expandafter\let\expandafter\FV@Line@Buffer
1323         \csname\FancyVerbBufferLineName\arabic{FancyVerbBufferIndex}\endcsname
1324       \expandafter\VerbatimInsertBuffer@def@FV@Line\expandafter{\FV@Line@Buffer}%
1325       \def\next{\FV@PreProcessLine\FV@GetLine}%
1326       \stepcounter{FancyVerbBufferIndex}%
1327     \else
1328       \def\next{%
1329         \PackageError{fvextra}%
1330         {Buffer with line macro named
1331           "\FancyVerbBufferLineName\arabic{FancyVerbBufferIndex}" does not exist}%
1332         {Check bufferlinename, bufferlengthname, and globalbuffer settings}%
1333         }%
1334       \fi
1335     \fi
1336     \next}%
1337 \FVB@Verbatim
1338 \FVE@Verbatim
1339 \setcounter{FancyVerbBufferIndex}{0}%
1340 \endgroup
1341 \@doendpe}

```

12.9.6 \VerbatimClearBuffer

`\VerbatimClearBuffer` Clear an existing buffer.

```

1342 \newcommand{\VerbatimClearBuffer}[1][1]{%
1343   \begingroup
1344   \def\FV@KeyValues{#1}%
1345   \FV@UseKeyValues
1346   \setcounter{FancyVerbBufferIndex}%
1347   {\expandafter\value\expandafter{\FV@bufferlengthname}}%
1348   \expandafter\setcounter\expandafter{\FV@bufferlengthname}{0}%
1349   \loop\unless\ifnum\value{FancyVerbBufferIndex}<1\relax
1350     \expandafter\global\expandafter\let
1351       \csname\FancyVerbBufferLineName\arabic{FancyVerbBufferIndex}\endcsname
1352       \FV@Undefined
1353     \addtocounter{FancyVerbBufferIndex}{-1}%
1354   \repeat
1355   \setcounter{FancyVerbBufferIndex}{0}%
1356   \endgroup}

```

12.10 Patches

12.10.1 Delimiting characters for verbatim commands

Unlike `\verb`, `fancyvrb`'s commands like `\Verb` cannot take arguments delimited by characters like `#` and `%` due to the way that starred commands and optional arguments are implemented. The relevant macros are redefined to make this possible.

`fancyvrb`'s `\Verb` is actually implemented in `\FVC@Verb`. This is invoked by a helper macro `\FV@Command` which allows versions of commands with customized options:

```
\FV@Command{<customized_options>}{<base_command_name>}
```

`\Verb` is then defined as `\def\Verb{\FV@Command}{\Verb}`. The definition of `\FV@Command` (and `\FV@@Command` which it uses internally) involves looking ahead for a star `*` (`\@ifstar`) and for a left square bracket `[` that delimits an optional argument (`\@ifnextchar`). As a result, the next character is tokenized under the current, normal catcode regime. This prevents `\Verb` from being able to use delimiting characters like `#` and `%` that work with `\verb`.

`\FV@Command` and `\FV@@Command` are redefined so that this lookahead tokenizes under a typical verbatim catcode regime (with one exception that is explained below). This enables `\verb`-style delimiters. This does not account for any custom catcode changes introduced by `\fvset`, customized commands, or optional arguments. However, delimiting characters should never need custom catcodes, and both the `fancyvrb` definition of `\Verb` (when not used inside another macro) as well as the `fvextra` reimplementation (in all cases) handle the possibility of delimiters with valid but non-typical catcodes. Other, non-verbatim commands that use `\FV@Command`, such as `\UseVerb`, are not affected by the patch.

The catcode regime for lookahead has one exception to a typical verbatim catcode regime: The curly braces `{}` retain their normal codes. This allows the `fvextra` reimplementation of `\Verb` to use a pair of curly braces as delimiters, which can be convenient when `\Verb` is used within another command. Since the original `fancyvrb` implementation of `\Verb` with unpatched `\FV@Command` is incompatible with curly braces being used as delimiters in any form, this does not affect any pre-existing `fancyvrb` functionality.

```
\FV@Command
1357 \def\FV@Command#1#2{%
1358   \FVExtra@ifstarVArg
1359   {\def\FV@KeyValues{#1,showspaces,showtabs}\FV@@Command{#2}}%
1360   {\def\FV@KeyValues{#1}\FV@@Command{#2}}

\FV@@Command
1361 \def\FV@@Command#1{%
1362   \FVExtra@ifnextcharVArg[%
1363     {\FV@GetKeyValues{\@nameuse{FVC@#1}}}%
1364     {\@nameuse{FVC@#1}}}
```

12.10.2 `\CustomVerbatimCommand` compatibility with `\FVExtraRobustCommand`

`\@CustomVerbatimCommand` #1 is `\newcommand` or `\renewcommand`, #2 is the (re)new command, #3 is the base `fancyvrb` command, #4 is options.


```

1365 \def\@CustomVerbatimCommand#1#2#3#4{%
1366   \begingroup\fvset{#4}\endgroup
1367   \@ifundefined{FVC@#3}%
1368     {\FV@Error{Command `string#3' is not a FancyVerb command.}\@eha}%
1369     {\ifcsname Robust#3\endcsname
1370       \expandafter\@firstoftwo
1371       \else
1372       \expandafter\@secondoftwo
1373       \fi
1374     {\expandafter\let\expandafter\@tempa\csname #3\endcsname
1375       \def\@tempb##1##2##3{%
1376         \expandafter\def\expandafter\@tempc\expandafter{%
1377           \csname Robust\expandafter@gobble\string#2\endcsname}%
1378         \def\@tempd###1{%
1379           #1{#2}{##1###1##3}}%
1380         \expandafter\@tempd\@tempc
1381         \expandafter\protected\expandafter\def\@tempc{\FV@Command{#4}{#3}}%
1382         \expandafter\@tempb\@tempa}%
1383       {#1{#2}{\FV@Command{#4}{#3}}}}

```

12.10.3 Visible spaces

`\FancyVerbSpace` The default definition of visible spaces (`showspaces=true`) could allow font commands to escape under some circumstances, depending on how it is used:

```

%{\catcode`\ =12 \gdef\FancyVerbSpace{\tt }}
%

```

`\textvisiblespace` is not an alternative because it does not have the correct width. The redefinition follows <https://tex.stackexchange.com/a/120231/10742>.

```

1384 \def\FancyVerbSpace{%
1385   \makebox[0.5em]{%
1386     \kern.07em
1387     \vrule height.3ex
1388     \hrulefill
1389     \vrule height.3ex
1390     \kern.07em}}

```

12.10.4 obeytabs with visible tabs and with tabs inside macro arguments

`\FV@TrueTab` governs tab appearance when `obeytabs=true` and `showtabs=true`. It is redefined so that symbols with flexible width, such as `\rightarrowfill`, will work as expected. In the original `fancyvrb` definition, `\kern\@tempdima\hbox to\z@{...}`. The `\kern` is removed and instead the `\hbox` is given the width `\@tempdima`.

`\FV@TrueTab` and related macros are also modified so that they function for tabs inside macro arguments when `obeytabs=true` (inside curly braces `{}` with their normal meaning, when using `commandchars`, etc.). The `fancyvrb` implementation of tab expansion assumes that tabs are never inside a group; when a group that contains a tab is present, the entire line typically vanishes. The new implementation keeps the `fancyvrb` behavior exactly for tabs outside groups; they are perfectly expanded to tab stops. Tabs inside groups cannot be perfectly expanded to tab stops, at least not using the `fancyvrb` approach. Instead, when `fvextra` encounters a

run of whitespace characters (tabs and possibly spaces), it makes the assumption that the nearest tab stop was at the beginning of the run. This gives the correct behavior if the whitespace characters are leading indentation that happens to be within a macro. Otherwise, it will typically not give correct tab expansion—but at least the entire line will not be discarded, and the run of whitespace will be represented, even if imperfectly.

A general solution to tab expansion may be possible, but will almost certainly require multiple compiles, perhaps even one compile (or more) per tab. The `zref` package provides a `\zsaveposx` macro that stores the current x position on the page for subsequent compiles. This macro, or a similar macro from another package, could be used to establish a reference point at the beginning of each line. Then each run of whitespace that contains a tab could have a reference point established at its start, and tabs could be expanded based on the distance between the start of the run and the start of the line. Such an approach would allow the first run of whitespace to measure its distance from the start of the line on the 2nd compile (once both reference points were established), so it would be able to expand the first run of whitespace correctly on the 3rd compile. That would allow a second run of whitespace to definitely establish its starting point on the 3rd compile, which would allow it to expand correctly on the 4th compile. And so on. Thus, while it should be possible to perform completely correct tab expansion with such an approach, it will in general require at least 4 compiles to do better than the current approach. Furthermore, the sketch of the algorithm provided so far does not include any complications introduced by line breaking. In the current approach, it is necessary to determine how each tab would be expanded in the absence of line breaking, save all tab widths, and then expand using saved widths during the actual typesetting with line breaking.

`FV@TrueTabGroupLevel` Counter for keeping track of the group level (`\currentgrouplevel`) at the very beginning of a line, inside `\FancyVerbFormatLine` but outside `\FancyVerbFormatText`, which is where the tab expansion macro is invoked. This allows us to determine whether we are in a group, and expand tabs accordingly.

```
1391 \newcounter{FV@TrueTabGroupLevel}
```

`\FV@@ObeyTabs` The `fancyvrb` macro responsible for tab expansion is modified so that it can handle tabs inside groups, even if imperfectly. We need to use a special version of the space, `\FV@Space@ObeyTabs`, that within a group will capture all following spaces or tabs and then insert them with tab expansion based on the beginning of the run of whitespace. We need to record the current group level, but then increment it by 1 because all comparisons will be performed within the `\hbox{...}`. The `\FV@TmpCurrentGroupLevel` is needed for compatibility with the `calc` package, which redefines `\setcounter`.

```
1392 \def\FV@@ObeyTabs#1{%
1393   \let\FV@Space@Orig\FV@Space
1394   \let\FV@Space\FV@Space@ObeyTabs
1395   \edef\FV@TmpCurrentGroupLevel{\the\currentgrouplevel}%
1396   \setcounter{FV@TrueTabGroupLevel}{\FV@TmpCurrentGroupLevel}%
1397   \addtocounter{FV@TrueTabGroupLevel}{1}%
1398   \setbox\FV@TabBox=\hbox{#1}\box\FV@TabBox
1399   \let\FV@Space\FV@Space@Orig}
```

`\FV@TrueTab` Version that follows `fancyvrb` if not in a group and takes another approach otherwise.

```

1400 \def\FV@TrueTab{%
1401   \ifnum\value{FV@TrueTabGroupLevel}=\the\currentgrouplevel\relax
1402     \expandafter\FV@TrueTab@NoGroup
1403   \else
1404     \expandafter\FV@TrueTab@Group
1405   \fi}

```

\FV@TrueTabSaveWidth When linebreaking is in use, the fancyvrb tab expansion algorithm cannot be used directly, since it involves `\hbox`, which doesn't allow for line breaks. In those cases, tab widths will be calculated for the case without breaks and saved, and then saved widths will be used in the actual typesetting. This macro is `\let` to width-saving code in those cases.

```
1406 \let\FV@TrueTabSaveWidth\relax
```

FV@TrueTabCounter Counter for tracking saved tabs.

```
1407 \newcounter{FV@TrueTabCounter}
```

\FV@TrueTabSaveWidth@Save Save the current tab width, then increment the tab counter. `\@tempdima` will hold the current tab width.

```

1408 \def\FV@TrueTabSaveWidth@Save{%
1409   \expandafter\xdef\csname FV@TrueTab:Width\arabic{FV@TrueTabCounter}\endcsname{%
1410     \number\@tempdima}%
1411   \stepcounter{FV@TrueTabCounter}}

```

\FV@TrueTab@NoGroup This follows the fancyvrb approach exactly, except for the `\hbox` to `\@tempdima` adjustment and the addition of `\FV@TrueTabSaveWidth`.

```

1412 \def\FV@TrueTab@NoGroup{%
1413   \egroup
1414   \@tempdima=\FV@ObeyTabSize sp\relax
1415   \@tempcnta=\wd\FV@TabBox
1416   \advance\@tempcnta\FV@ObeyTabSize\relax
1417   \divide\@tempcnta\@tempdima
1418   \multiply\@tempdima\@tempcnta
1419   \advance\@tempdima-\wd\FV@TabBox
1420   \FV@TrueTabSaveWidth
1421   \setbox\FV@TabBox=\hbox\bgroup
1422   \unhbox\FV@TabBox\hbox to\@tempdima{\hss\FV@TabChar}}

```

FV@ObeyTabs@Whitespace@Tab In a group where runs of whitespace characters are collected, we need to keep track of whether a tab has been found, so we can avoid expansion and the associated `\hbox` for spaces without tabs.

```
1423 \newbool{FV@ObeyTabs@Whitespace@Tab}
```

\FV@TrueTab@Group If in a group, a tab should start collecting whitespace characters for later tab expansion, beginning with itself. The collected whitespace will use `\FV@FVTabToken` and `\FV@FVSpaceToken` so that any `\ifx` comparisons performed later will behave as expected. This shouldn't be strictly necessary, because `\FancyVerbBreakStart` operates with saved tab widths rather than using the tab expansion code directly. But it is safer in case any other unanticipated scanning is going on.

```

1424 \def\FV@TrueTab@Group{%
1425   \booltrue{FV@ObeyTabs@Whitespace@Tab}%
1426   \gdef\FV@TmpWhitespace{\FV@FVTabToken}%
1427   \FV@ObeyTabs@ScanWhitespace}

```

`\FV@Space@ObeyTabs` Space treatment, like tab treatment, now depends on whether we are in a group, because in a group we want to collect all runs of whitespace and then expand any tabs.

```

1428 \def\FV@Space@ObeyTabs{%
1429   \ifnum\value{FV@TrueTabGroupLevel}=\the\currentgrouplevel\relax
1430     \expandafter\FV@Space@ObeyTabs@NoGroup
1431   \else
1432     \expandafter\FV@Space@ObeyTabs@Group
1433   \fi}

```

`\FV@Space@ObeyTabs@NoGroup` Fall back to normal space.

```

1434 \def\FV@Space@ObeyTabs@NoGroup{\FV@Space@Orig}

```

`\FV@Space@ObeyTabs@Group` Make a note that no tabs have yet been encountered, store the current space, then scan for following whitespace.

```

1435 \def\FV@Space@ObeyTabs@Group{%
1436   \boolfalse{FV@ObeyTabs@Whitespace@Tab}%
1437   \gdef\FV@TmpWhitespace{\FV@FVSpaceToken}%
1438   \FV@ObeyTabs@ScanWhitespace}

```

`\FV@ObeyTabs@ScanWhitespace` Collect whitespace until the end of the run, then process it. Proper lookahead comparison requires `\FV@FVSpaceToken` and `\FV@FVTabToken`.

```

1439 \def\FV@ObeyTabs@ScanWhitespace{%
1440   \@ifnextchar\FV@FVSpaceToken%
1441     {\FV@TrueTab@CaptureWhitespace@Space}%
1442     {\ifx\@let@token\FV@FVTabToken
1443       \expandafter\FV@TrueTab@CaptureWhitespace@Tab
1444       \else
1445         \expandafter\FV@ObeyTabs@ResolveWhitespace
1446       \fi}}
1447 \def\FV@TrueTab@CaptureWhitespace@Space#1{%
1448   \g@addto@macro\FV@TmpWhitespace{\FV@FVSpaceToken}%
1449   \FV@ObeyTabs@ScanWhitespace}
1450 \def\FV@TrueTab@CaptureWhitespace@Tab#1{%
1451   \booltrue{FV@ObeyTabs@Whitespace@Tab}%
1452   \g@addto@macro\FV@TmpWhitespace{\FV@FVTabToken}%
1453   \FV@ObeyTabs@ScanWhitespace}

```

`\FV@TrueTab@Group@Expand` Yet another tab definition, this one for use in the actual expansion of tabs in whitespace. This uses the fancyvrb algorithm, but only over a restricted region known to contain no groups.

```

1454 \newbox\FV@TabBox@Group
1455 \def\FV@TrueTab@Group@Expand{%
1456   \egroup
1457   \@tempdima=\FV@ObeyTabSize sp\relax
1458   \@tempcnta=\wd\FV@TabBox@Group
1459   \advance\@tempcnta\FV@ObeyTabSize\relax
1460   \divide\@tempcnta\@tempdima
1461   \multiply\@tempdima\@tempcnta
1462   \advance\@tempdima-\wd\FV@TabBox@Group
1463   \FV@TrueTabSaveWidth
1464   \setbox\FV@TabBox@Group=\hbox\bgroup
1465     \unhbox\FV@TabBox@Group\hbox to\@tempdima{\hss\FV@TabChar}}

```

`\FV@ObeyTabs@ResolveWhitespace` Need to make sure the right definitions of the space and tab are in play here. Only do tab expansion, with the associated `\hbox`, if a tab is indeed present.

```

1466 \def\FV@ObeyTabs@ResolveWhitespace{%
1467   \let\FV@Space\FV@Space@Orig
1468   \let\FV@Tab\FV@TrueTab@Group@Expand
1469   \expandafter\FV@ObeyTabs@ResolveWhitespace@i\expandafter{\FV@TmpWhitespace}%
1470   \let\FV@Space\FV@Space@ObeyTabs
1471   \let\FV@Tab\FV@TrueTab}
1472 \def\FV@ObeyTabs@ResolveWhitespace@i#1{%
1473   \ifbool{FV@ObeyTabs@Whitespace@Tab}%
1474     {\setbox\FV@TabBox@Group=\hbox{#1}\box\FV@TabBox@Group}%
1475     {#1}}

```

12.10.5 Spacing in math mode

`\FancyVerbMathSpace` `\FV@Space` is defined as either a non-breaking space or a visible representation of a space, depending on the option `showspaces`. Neither option is desirable when typeset math is included within verbatim content, because spaces will not be discarded as in normal math mode. Define a space for math mode.

```

1476 \def\FancyVerbMathSpace{ }

```

`\FV@SetupMathSpace` Define a macro that will activate math spaces, then add it to an `fvextra` hook.

```

1477 \def\FV@SetupMathSpace{%
1478   \everymath\expandafter{\the\everymath\let\FV@Space\FancyVerbMathSpace}}
1479 \g@addto@macro\FV@FormattingPrep@PreHook{\FV@SetupMathSpace}

```

12.10.6 Fonts and symbols in math mode

The single quote (`'`) does not become `\prime` when typeset math is included within verbatim content, due to the definition of the character in `\@noligs`. This patch adds a new definition of the character in math mode, inspired by <http://tex.stackexchange.com/q/223876/10742>. It also redefines other characters in `\@noligs` to behave normally within math mode and switches the default font within math mode, so that `amsmath`'s `\text` will work as expected.

`\FV@pr@m@s` Define a version of `\pr@m@s` from `latex.ltx` that works with active `'`. In verbatim contexts, `'` is made active by `\@noligs`.

```

1480 \begingroup
1481 \catcode'\prime=\active
1482 \catcode`\^=7
1483 \gdef\FV@pr@m@s{%
1484   \ifx'\@let@token
1485     \expandafter\pr@@@s
1486   \else
1487     \ifx^\@let@token
1488       \expandafter\expandafter\expandafter\pr@@@t
1489     \else
1490       \egroup
1491     \fi
1492   \fi}
1493 \endgroup

```

`\FV@SetupMathFont` Set the font back to default from the verbatim font.

```
1494 \def\FV@SetupMathFont{%
1495   \everymath\expandafter{\the\everymath\fontfamily{\familydefault}\selectfont}}
1496 \g@addto@macro\FV@FormattingPrep@PreHook{\FV@SetupMathFont}
```

`\FV@SetupMathLigs` Make all characters in `\@noligs` behave normally, and switch to `\FV@pr@m@s`. The relevant definition from `latex.ltx`:

```
%\def\verbatim@nolig@list{\do\` \do\<\do\>\do\, \do\' \do\ -}
%
1497 \def\FV@SetupMathLigs{%
1498   \everymath\expandafter{%
1499     \the\everymath
1500     \let\pr@m@s\FV@pr@m@s
1501     \begingroup\lccode\`~=\`'\lowercase{\endgroup\def~}{`}%
1502     \ifmmode\expandafter\active@math@prime\else'\fi}%
1503     \begingroup\lccode\`~=\`'\lowercase{\endgroup\def~}{`}%
1504     \begingroup\lccode\`~=\`<\lowercase{\endgroup\def~}{<}%
1505     \begingroup\lccode\`~=\`>\lowercase{\endgroup\def~}{>}%
1506     \begingroup\lccode\`~=\`,`\lowercase{\endgroup\def~}{,}%
1507     \begingroup\lccode\`~=\`-\lowercase{\endgroup\def~}{-}%
1508   }%
1509 }
1510 \g@addto@macro\FV@FormattingPrep@PreHook{\FV@SetupMathLigs}
```

12.10.7 Ophaned label

`\FV@BeginListFrame@Lines` When `frame=lines` is used with a label, the label can be orphaned. This overwrites the default definition to add `\penalty\@M`. The fix is attributed to <http://tex.stackexchange.com/a/168021/10742>.

```
1511 \def\FV@BeginListFrame@Lines{%
1512   \begingroup
1513   \lineskip\z@skip
1514   \FV@SingleFrameLine{\z@}%
1515   \kern-0.5\baselineskip\relax
1516   \baselineskip\z@skip
1517   \kern\FV@FrameSep\relax
1518   \penalty\@M
1519   \endgroup}
```

12.10.8 rulecolor and fillcolor

The `rulecolor` and `fillcolor` options are redefined so that they accept color names directly, rather than requiring `\color{(color_name)}`. The definitions still allow the old usage.

`rulecolor`

```
1520 \define@key{FV}{rulecolor}{%
1521   \ifstrempy{#1}%
1522   {\let\FancyVerbRuleColor\relax}%
1523   {\ifstrequal{#1}{none}%
1524     {\let\FancyVerbRuleColor\relax}%
1525     {\def\@tempa{#1}%
```

```

1526     \FV@KVProcess@RuleColor#1\FV@Undefined}}
1527 \def\FV@KVProcess@RuleColor#1#2\FV@Undefined{%
1528   \ifx#1\color
1529   \else
1530     \expandafter\def\expandafter\@tempa\expandafter{%
1531       \expandafter\color\expandafter{\@tempa}}%
1532   \fi
1533   \let\FancyVerbRuleColor\@tempa}
1534 \fvset{rulecolor=none}

```

fillcolor

```

1535 \define@key{FV}{fillcolor}{%
1536   \ifstrempy{#1}%
1537   {\let\FancyVerbFillColor\relax}%
1538   {\ifstrequal{#1}{none}%
1539     {\let\FancyVerbFillColor\relax}%
1540     {\def\@tempa{#1}%
1541       \FV@KVProcess@FillColor#1\FV@Undefined}}}
1542 \def\FV@KVProcess@FillColor#1#2\FV@Undefined{%
1543   \ifx#1\color
1544   \else
1545     \expandafter\def\expandafter\@tempa\expandafter{%
1546       \expandafter\color\expandafter{\@tempa}}%
1547   \fi
1548   \let\FancyVerbFillColor\@tempa}
1549 \fvset{fillcolor=none}

```

12.11 Extensions

12.11.1 New options requiring minimal implementation

`linenos fancyvrb` allows line numbers via the options `numbers=left` and `numbers=right`. This creates a `linenos` key that is essentially an alias for `numbers=left`.

```

1550 \define@booleankey{FV}{linenos}%
1551   {\@nameuse{FV@Numbers@left}}{\@nameuse{FV@Numbers@none}}

```

`tab` Redefine `\FancyVerbTab`.

```

1552 \define@key{FV}{tab}{\def\FancyVerbTab{#1}}

```

`tabcolor` Set tab color, or allow it to adjust to surroundings (the default `fancyvrb` behavior). This involves re-creating the `showtabs` option to add `\FV@TabColor`.

```

1553 \define@key{FV}{tabcolor}%
1554   {\ifstrempy{#1}%
1555     {\let\FV@TabColor\relax}%
1556     {\ifstrequal{#1}{none}%
1557       {\let\FV@TabColor\relax}%
1558       {\def\FV@TabColor{\textcolor{#1}}}}}
1559 \define@booleankey{FV}{showtabs}%
1560   {\def\FV@TabChar{\FV@TabColor\FancyVerbTab}}%
1561   {\let\FV@TabChar\relax}
1562 \fvset{tabcolor=none, showtabs=false}

```

`showspaces` Reimplement `showspaces` with a bool to work with new space options.
FV@showspaces

```

1563 \newbool{FV@showspaces}
1564 \define@booleankey{FV}{showspaces}%
1565 {\booltrue{FV@showspaces}}%
1566 {\boolfalse{FV@showspaces}}
1567 \fvset{showspaces=false}

```

`space` Redefine `\FancyVerbSpace`, which is the visible space.

```

1568 \define@key{FV}{space}{\def\FancyVerbSpace{#1}}

```

`spacecolor` Set space color, or allow it to adjust to surroundings (the default fancyvrb behavior). This involves re-creating the `showspaces` option to add `\FV@SpaceColor`.

```

1569 \define@key{FV}{spacecolor}%
1570 {\ifstrempy{#1}%
1571   {\let\FV@SpaceColor\relax}%
1572   {\ifstrequal{#1}{none}%
1573     {\let\FV@SpaceColor\relax}%
1574     {\def\FV@SpaceColor{\textcolor{#1}}}}
1575 \fvset{spacecolor=none}

```

`spacebreak` Line break for spaces that is inserted when spaces are visible (`showspaces=true`) or `\FancyVerbSpaceBreak` when breaks around spaces are handled specially (`breakcollapsespaces=false`). Not used for regular spaces under default conditions.

```

1576 \define@key{FV}{spacebreak}{%
1577   \def\FancyVerbSpaceBreak{#1}}
1578 \fvset{spacebreak=\discretionary{}{}{}}

```

`breakcollapsespaces` When a line break occurs within a sequence of regular space characters `FV@breakcollapsespaces` (`showspaces=false`), collapse the spaces into a single space and then replace it with the break. When this is `true`, a sequence of spaces will cause at most a single line break, and the first character on the wrapped line after the break will be a non-space character. When this is `false`, a sequence of spaces may result in multiple line breaks. Each wrapped line besides the last will contain only spaces. The final wrapped line may contain leading spaces before any non-space character(s).

```

1579 \newbool{FV@breakcollapsespaces}
1580 \define@booleankey{FV}{breakcollapsespaces}%
1581 {\booltrue{FV@breakcollapsespaces}}%
1582 {\boolfalse{FV@breakcollapsespaces}}%
1583 \fvset{breakcollapsespaces=true}

```

`\FV@DefFVSpace` Redefine `\FV@Space` based on `fvextra` options that affect spaces.

This must be added to `\FV@FormattingPrep@PreHook`, but only after `breakbefore` and `breakafter` macros are defined. Hence the `\AtEndOfPackage`.

```

1584 \def\FV@DefFVSpace{%
1585   \ifbool{FV@showspaces}%
1586     {\ifbool{FV@breaklines}%
1587       {\ifcsname FV@BreakBefore@Token\FV@SpaceCatTen\endcsname
1588         \def\FV@Space{\FV@SpaceColor{\FancyVerbSpace}}%
1589       \else\ifcsname FV@BreakAfter@Token\FV@SpaceCatTen\endcsname
1590         \def\FV@Space{\FV@SpaceColor{\FancyVerbSpace}}%
1591       \else
1592         \def\FV@Space{\FV@SpaceColor{\FancyVerbSpace}\FancyVerbSpaceBreak}}%

```



```

1593     \fi\fi}%
1594     {\def\FV@Space{\FV@SpaceColor{\FancyVerbSpace}}}%
1595     {\ifbool{FV@breaklines}%
1596       {\ifcsname FV@BreakBefore@Token\FV@SpaceCatTen\endcsname
1597         \def\FV@Space{\mbox{\FV@SpaceCatTen}}%
1598       \else\ifcsname FV@BreakAfter@Token\FV@SpaceCatTen\endcsname
1599         \def\FV@Space{\mbox{\FV@SpaceCatTen}}%
1600       \else
1601         \ifbool{FV@breakcollapsespaces}%
1602           {\def\FV@Space{\FV@SpaceCatTen}}%
1603         {\def\FV@Space{\mbox{\FV@SpaceCatTen}\FancyVerbSpaceBreak}}%
1604       \fi\fi}%
1605     {\def\FV@Space{\FV@SpaceCatTen}}}%
1606 \AtEndOfPackage{%
1607   \g@addto@macro\FV@FormattingPrep@PreHook{\FV@DefFVSpace}}

```

mathescape Give \$, &, ^, and _ their normal catcodes to allow normal typeset math.

```

1608 \define@booleankey{FV}{mathescape}%
1609 {\let\FancyVerbMathEscape\FV@MathEscape}%
1610 {\let\FancyVerbMathEscape\relax}
1611 \def\FV@MathEscape{\catcode`\$=3\catcode`\&=4\catcode`\^=7\catcode`\_ =8\relax}
1612 \FV@AddToHook\FV@CatCodesHook\FancyVerbMathEscape
1613 \fvset{mathescape=false}

```

beameroverlays Give < and > their normal catcodes (not \active), so that beamer overlays will work. This modifies \@noligs because that is the only way to prevent the settings from being overwritten later. This could have used \FV@CatCodesHook, but then it would have had to compare \@noligs to \relax to avoid issues when \let\@noligs\relax in VerbatimOut.

```

1614 \define@booleankey{FV}{beameroverlays}%
1615 {\let\FancyVerbBeamerOverlays\FV@BeamerOverlays}%
1616 {\let\FancyVerbBeamerOverlays\relax}
1617 \def\FV@BeamerOverlays{%
1618   \expandafter\def\expandafter\@noligs\expandafter{\@noligs
1619     \catcode`\<=12\catcode`\>=12\relax}}
1620 \FV@AddToHook\FV@FormattingPrep@PreHook\FancyVerbBeamerOverlays
1621 \fvset{beameroverlays=false}

```

curlyquotes Let ` and ' produce curly quotation marks ‘ and ’ rather than the backtick and typewriter single quotation mark produced by default via upquote.

```

1622 \newbool{FV@CurlyQuotes}
1623 \define@booleankey{FV}{curlyquotes}%
1624 {\booltrue{FV@CurlyQuotes}}%
1625 {\boolfalse{FV@CurlyQuotes}}
1626 \def\FancyVerbCurlyQuotes{%
1627   \ifbool{FV@CurlyQuotes}%
1628     {\expandafter\def\expandafter\@noligs\expandafter{\@noligs
1629       \begingroup\lccode`\~=`\lowercase{\endgroup\def~}{`}}%
1630     \begingroup\lccode`\~=`\lowercase{\endgroup\def~}{'}}%
1631   {}}
1632 \g@addto@macro\FV@FormattingPrep@PreHook{\FancyVerbCurlyQuotes}
1633 \fvset{curlyquotes=false}

```

fontencoding Add option for font encoding.

```
1634 \define@key{FV}{fontencoding}%
1635   {\ifstrempy{#1}%
1636     {\let\FV@FontEncoding\relax}%
1637     {\ifstrequal{#1}{none}%
1638       {\let\FV@FontEncoding\relax}%
1639       {\def\FV@FontEncoding{\fontencoding{#1}}}}
1640 \expandafter\def\expandafter\FV@SetupFont\expandafter{%
1641   \expandafter\FV@FontEncoding\FV@SetupFont}
1642 \fvset{fontencoding=none}
```

12.11.2 Formatting with `\FancyVerbFormatLine`, `\FancyVerbFormatText`, and `\FancyVerbHighlightLine`

`fancyvrb` defines `\FancyVerbFormatLine`, which defines the formatting for each line. The introduction of line breaks introduces an issue for `\FancyVerbFormatLine`. Does it format the entire line, including any whitespace in the margins or behind line break symbols (that is, is it outside the `\parbox` in which the entire line is wrapped when breaking is active)? Or does it only format the text part of the line, only affecting the actual characters (inside the `\parbox`)? Since both might be desirable, `\FancyVerbFormatLine` is assigned to the entire line, and a new macro `\FancyVerbFormatText` is assigned to the text, within the `\parbox`.

An additional complication is that the `fancyvrb` documentation says that the default value is `\def\FancyVerbFormatLine#1{#1}`. But the actual default is `\def\FancyVerbFormatLine#1{\FV@ObeyTabs{#1}}`. That is, `\FV@ObeyTabs` needs to operate directly on the line to handle tabs. As a result, *all* `fancyvrb` commands that involve `\FancyVerbFormatLine` are patched, so that `\def\FancyVerbFormatLine#1{#1}`.

An additional macro `\FancyVerbHighlightLine` is added between `\FancyVerbFormatLine` and `\FancyVerbFormatText`. This is used to highlight selected lines (section 12.11.4). It is inside `\FancyVerbHighlightLine` so that if `\FancyVerbHighlightLine` is used to provide a background color, `\FancyVerbHighlightLine` can override it.

`\FancyVerbFormatLine` Format the entire line, following the definition given in the `fancyvrb` documentation. Because this is formatting the entire line, using boxes works with line breaking.

```
1643 \def\FancyVerbFormatLine#1{#1}
```

`\FancyVerbFormatText` Format only the text part of the line. Because this is inside all of the line breaking commands, using boxes here can conflict with line breaking.

```
1644 \def\FancyVerbFormatText#1{#1}
```

`\FV@ListProcessLine@NoBreak` Redefined `\FV@ListProcessLine` in which `\FancyVerbFormatText` is added and tab handling is explicit. The `@NoBreak` suffix is added because `\FV@ListProcessLine` will be `\let` to either this macro or to `\FV@ListProcessLine@Break` depending on whether line breaking is enabled.

```
1645 \def\FV@ListProcessLine@NoBreak#1{%
1646   \hbox to \hsize{%
1647     \kern\leftmargin
1648     \hbox to \linewidth{%
1649       \FV@LeftListNumber
1650       \FV@LeftListFrame
```

```

1651     \FancyVerbFormatLine{%
1652         \FancyVerbHighlightLine{%
1653             \FV@ObeyTabs{\FancyVerbFormatText{#1}}}\hss
1654     \FV@RightListFrame
1655     \FV@RightListNumber}%
1656     \hss}}

```

`\FV@BProcessLine` Redefined `\FV@BProcessLine` in which `\FancyVerbFormatText` is added and tab handling is explicit.

```

1657 \def\FV@BProcessLine#1{%
1658     \hbox{\FancyVerbFormatLine{%
1659         \FancyVerbHighlightLine{%
1660             \FV@ObeyTabs{\FancyVerbFormatText{#1}}}}}}

```

12.11.3 Line numbering

Add several new line numbering options. `numberfirstline` always numbers the first line, regardless of `stepnumber`. `stepnumberfromfirst` numbers the first line, and then every line that differs from its number by a multiple of `stepnumber`. `stepnumberoffsetvalues` determines whether line numbers are always an exact multiple of `stepnumber` (the new default behavior) or whether there is an offset when `firstnumber` \neq 1 (the old default behavior). A new option `numbers=both` is created to allow line numbers on both left and right simultaneously.

`FV@NumberFirstLine`

```
1661 \newbool{FV@NumberFirstLine}
```

`numberfirstline`

```

1662 \define@booleankey{FV}{numberfirstline}%
1663 {\booltrue{FV@NumberFirstLine}}%
1664 {\boolfalse{FV@NumberFirstLine}}
1665 \fvset{numberfirstline=false}

```

`FV@StepNumberFromFirst`

```
1666 \newbool{FV@StepNumberFromFirst}
```

`stepnumberfromfirst`

```

1667 \define@booleankey{FV}{stepnumberfromfirst}%
1668 {\booltrue{FV@StepNumberFromFirst}}%
1669 {\boolfalse{FV@StepNumberFromFirst}}
1670 \fvset{stepnumberfromfirst=false}

```

`FV@StepNumberOffsetValues`

```
1671 \newbool{FV@StepNumberOffsetValues}
```

`stepnumberoffsetvalues`

```

1672 \define@booleankey{FV}{stepnumberoffsetvalues}%
1673 {\booltrue{FV@StepNumberOffsetValues}}%
1674 {\boolfalse{FV@StepNumberOffsetValues}}
1675 \fvset{stepnumberoffsetvalues=false}

```

`\FV@Numbers@left` Redefine `fancyvrb` macro to account for `numberfirstline`, `stepnumberfromfirst`, and `stepnumberoffsetvalues`. The `\let\FancyVerbStartNum\@ne` is needed to account for the case where `firstline` is never set, and defaults to zero (`\z@`).

```

1676 \def\FV@Numbers@left{%
1677   \let\FV@RightListNumber\relax
1678   \def\FV@LeftListNumber{%
1679     \ifx\FancyVerbStartNum\z@
1680       \let\FancyVerbStartNum\@ne
1681     \fi
1682     \ifbool{FV@StepNumberFromFirst}{%
1683       {\@tempcnta=\FV@CodeLineNo
1684        \@tempcntb=\FancyVerbStartNum
1685        \advance\@tempcntb\FV@StepNumber
1686        \divide\@tempcntb\FV@StepNumber
1687        \multiply\@tempcntb\FV@StepNumber
1688        \advance\@tempcnta\@tempcntb
1689        \advance\@tempcnta-\FancyVerbStartNum
1690        \@tempcntb=\@tempcnta}%
1691       {\ifbool{FV@StepNumberOffsetValues}{%
1692         {\@tempcnta=\FV@CodeLineNo
1693          \@tempcntb=\FV@CodeLineNo}%
1694         {\@tempcnta=\c@FancyVerbLine
1695          \@tempcntb=\c@FancyVerbLine}}}%
1696       \divide\@tempcntb\FV@StepNumber
1697       \multiply\@tempcntb\FV@StepNumber
1698       \ifnum\@tempcnta=\@tempcntb
1699         \ifFV@NumberBlankLines
1700           \hbox to\z@{\hss\theFancyVerbLine\kern\FV@NumberSep}%
1701         \else
1702           \ifx\FV@Line\empty
1703             \else
1704               \hbox to\z@{\hss\theFancyVerbLine\kern\FV@NumberSep}%
1705             \fi
1706           \fi
1707         \else
1708           \ifbool{FV@NumberFirstLine}{%
1709             \ifnum\FV@CodeLineNo=\FancyVerbStartNum
1710               \hbox to\z@{\hss\theFancyVerbLine\kern\FV@NumberSep}%
1711             \fi}{%
1712           \fi}%
1713 }

```

`\FV@Numbers@right` Redefine `fancyvrb` macro to account for `numberfirstline`, `stepnumberfromfirst`, and `stepnumberoffsetvalues`.

```

1714 \def\FV@Numbers@right{%
1715   \let\FV@LeftListNumber\relax
1716   \def\FV@RightListNumber{%
1717     \ifx\FancyVerbStartNum\z@
1718       \let\FancyVerbStartNum\@ne
1719     \fi
1720     \ifbool{FV@StepNumberFromFirst}{%
1721       {\@tempcnta=\FV@CodeLineNo
1722        \@tempcntb=\FancyVerbStartNum
1723        \advance\@tempcntb\FV@StepNumber

```

```

1724     \divide\@tempcntb\FV@StepNumber
1725     \multiply\@tempcntb\FV@StepNumber
1726     \advance\@tempcnta\@tempcntb
1727     \advance\@tempcnta-\FancyVerbStartNum
1728     \@tempcntb=\@tempcnta}%
1729     {\ifbool{FV@StepNumberOffsetValues}%
1730      {\@tempcnta=\FV@CodeLineNo
1731       \@tempcntb=\FV@CodeLineNo}%
1732      {\@tempcnta=\c@FancyVerbLine
1733       \@tempcntb=\c@FancyVerbLine}}}%
1734     \divide\@tempcntb\FV@StepNumber
1735     \multiply\@tempcntb\FV@StepNumber
1736     \ifnum\@tempcnta=\@tempcntb
1737       \if@FV@NumberBlankLines
1738         \hbox to\z@{\kern\FV@NumberSep\theFancyVerbLine\hss}%
1739       \else
1740         \ifx\FV@Line\empty
1741           \else
1742             \hbox to\z@{\kern\FV@NumberSep\theFancyVerbLine\hss}%
1743           \fi
1744         \fi
1745       \else
1746         \ifbool{FV@NumberFirstLine}{%
1747           \ifnum\FV@CodeLineNo=\FancyVerbStartNum
1748             \hbox to\z@{\hss\theFancyVerbLine\kern\FV@NumberSep}%
1749           \fi}{%
1750         \fi}%
1751 }

```

`\FV@Numbers@both` Define a new macro to allow numbers=both. This copies the definitions of `\FV@LeftListNumber` and `\FV@RightListNumber` from `\FV@Numbers@left` and `\FV@Numbers@right`, without the `\relax`'s.

```

1752 \def\FV@Numbers@both{%
1753   \def\FV@LeftListNumber{%
1754     \ifx\FancyVerbStartNum\z@
1755       \let\FancyVerbStartNum\@ne
1756     \fi
1757     \ifbool{FV@StepNumberFromFirst}%
1758     {\@tempcnta=\FV@CodeLineNo
1759      \@tempcntb=\FancyVerbStartNum
1760      \advance\@tempcntb\FV@StepNumber
1761      \divide\@tempcntb\FV@StepNumber
1762      \multiply\@tempcntb\FV@StepNumber
1763      \advance\@tempcnta\@tempcntb
1764      \advance\@tempcnta-\FancyVerbStartNum
1765      \@tempcntb=\@tempcnta}%
1766     {\ifbool{FV@StepNumberOffsetValues}%
1767      {\@tempcnta=\FV@CodeLineNo
1768       \@tempcntb=\FV@CodeLineNo}%
1769      {\@tempcnta=\c@FancyVerbLine
1770       \@tempcntb=\c@FancyVerbLine}}}%
1771     \divide\@tempcntb\FV@StepNumber
1772     \multiply\@tempcntb\FV@StepNumber
1773     \ifnum\@tempcnta=\@tempcntb

```

```

1774     \if@FV@NumberBlankLines
1775         \hbox to\z@{\hss\theFancyVerbLine\kern\FV@NumberSep}%
1776     \else
1777         \ifx\FV@Line\empty
1778         \else
1779             \hbox to\z@{\hss\theFancyVerbLine\kern\FV@NumberSep}%
1780         \fi
1781     \fi
1782 \else
1783     \ifbool{FV@NumberFirstLine}{%
1784         \ifnum\FV@CodeLineNo=\FancyVerbStartNum
1785             \hbox to\z@{\hss\theFancyVerbLine\kern\FV@NumberSep}%
1786         \fi}{}%
1787 \fi}%
1788 \def\FV@RightListNumber{%
1789     \ifx\FancyVerbStartNum\z@
1790         \let\FancyVerbStartNum\@ne
1791     \fi
1792     \ifbool{FV@StepNumberFromFirst}{%
1793         {\@tempcnta=\FV@CodeLineNo
1794         \@tempcntb=\FancyVerbStartNum
1795         \advance\@tempcntb\FV@StepNumber
1796         \divide\@tempcntb\FV@StepNumber
1797         \multiply\@tempcntb\FV@StepNumber
1798         \advance\@tempcnta-\@tempcntb
1799         \advance\@tempcnta-\FancyVerbStartNum
1800         \@tempcntb=\@tempcnta}%
1801     {\ifbool{FV@StepNumberOffsetValues}{%
1802         {\@tempcnta=\FV@CodeLineNo
1803         \@tempcntb=\FV@CodeLineNo}%
1804         {\@tempcnta=\c@FancyVerbLine
1805         \@tempcntb=\c@FancyVerbLine}}}%
1806     \divide\@tempcntb\FV@StepNumber
1807     \multiply\@tempcntb\FV@StepNumber
1808     \ifnum\@tempcnta=\@tempcntb
1809         \if@FV@NumberBlankLines
1810             \hbox to\z@{\kern\FV@NumberSep\theFancyVerbLine\hss}%
1811         \else
1812             \ifx\FV@Line\empty
1813             \else
1814                 \hbox to\z@{\kern\FV@NumberSep\theFancyVerbLine\hss}%
1815             \fi
1816         \fi
1817     \else
1818         \ifbool{FV@NumberFirstLine}{%
1819             \ifnum\FV@CodeLineNo=\FancyVerbStartNum
1820                 \hbox to\z@{\hss\theFancyVerbLine\kern\FV@NumberSep}%
1821             \fi}{}%
1822     \fi}%
1823 }

```

12.11.4 Line highlighting or emphasis

This adds an option `highlightlines` that allows specific lines, or lines within a range, to be highlighted or otherwise emphasized.

```
highlightlines
\FV@HighlightLinesList 1824 \define@key{FV}{highlightlines}{\def\FV@HighlightLinesList{#1}}%
1825 \fvset{highlightlines=}

highlightcolor Define color for highlighting. The default is LightCyan. A good alternative for a
\FV@HighlightColor brighter color would be LemonChiffon.
1826 \define@key{FV}{highlightcolor}{\def\FancyVerbHighlightColor{#1}}%
1827 \let\FancyVerbHighlightColor\@empty
1828 \ifcsname definecolor\endcsname
1829 \ifx\definecolor\relax
1830 \else
1831 \definecolor{FancyVerbHighlightColor}{rgb}{0.878, 1, 1}
1832 \fvset{highlightcolor=FancyVerbHighlightColor}
1833 \fi\fi
1834 \AtBeginDocument{%
1835 \ifx\FancyVerbHighlightColor\@empty
1836 \ifcsname definecolor\endcsname
1837 \ifx\definecolor\relax
1838 \else
1839 \definecolor{FancyVerbHighlightColor}{rgb}{0.878, 1, 1}
1840 \fvset{highlightcolor=FancyVerbHighlightColor}
1841 \fi\fi
1842 \fi}

\FancyVerbHighlightLine This is the entry macro into line highlighting. By default it should do nothing. It
is always invoked between \FancyVerbFormatLine and \FancyVerbFormatText,
so that it can provide a background color (won't interfere with line breaking) and
can override any formatting provided by \FancyVerbFormatLine. It is \let to
\FV@HighlightLine when highlighting is active.
1843 \def\FancyVerbHighlightLine#1{#1}

\FV@HighlightLine This determines whether highlighting should be performed, and if so, which macro
should be invoked.
1844 \def\FV@HighlightLine#1{%
1845 \@tempcnta=\c@FancyVerbLine
1846 \@tempcntb=\c@FancyVerbLine
1847 \ifcsname FV@HighlightLine:\number\@tempcnta\endcsname
1848 \advance\@tempcntb\m@ne
1849 \ifcsname FV@HighlightLine:\number\@tempcntb\endcsname
1850 \advance\@tempcntb\tw@
1851 \ifcsname FV@HighlightLine:\number\@tempcntb\endcsname
1852 \let\FV@HighlightLine@Next\FancyVerbHighlightLineMiddle
1853 \else
1854 \let\FV@HighlightLine@Next\FancyVerbHighlightLineLast
1855 \fi
1856 \else
1857 \advance\@tempcntb\tw@
1858 \ifcsname FV@HighlightLine:\number\@tempcntb\endcsname
```

```

1859     \let\FV@HighlightLine@Next\FancyVerbHighlightLineFirst
1860     \else
1861     \let\FV@HighlightLine@Next\FancyVerbHighlightLineSingle
1862     \fi
1863     \fi
1864 \else
1865     \let\FV@HighlightLine@Next\FancyVerbHighlightLineNormal
1866     \fi
1867 \FV@HighlightLine@Next{#1}%
1868 }

```

`\FancyVerbHighlightLineNormal` A normal line that is not highlighted or otherwise emphasized. This could be redefined to de-emphasize the line.

```
1869 \def\FancyVerbHighlightLineNormal#1{#1}
```

`\FV@TmpLength`

```
1870 \newlength{\FV@TmpLength}
```

`\FancyVerbHighlightLineFirst` The first line in a multi-line range.

`\fboxsep` is set to zero so as to avoid indenting the line or changing inter-line spacing. It is restored to its original value inside to prevent any undesired effects. The `\strut` is needed to get the highlighting to be the appropriate height. The `\rlap` and `\hspace` make the `\colorbox` expand to the full `\linewidth`. Note that if `\fboxsep` \neq 0, then we would want to use `\dimexpr\linewidth-2\fboxsep` or add `\hspace{-2\fboxsep}` at the end.

If this macro is customized so that the text cannot take up the full `\linewidth`, then adjustments may need to be made here or in the line breaking code to make sure that line breaking takes place at the appropriate location.

```

1871 \def\FancyVerbHighlightLineFirst#1{%
1872   \setlength{\FV@TmpLength}{\fboxsep}%
1873   \setlength{\fboxsep}{0pt}%
1874   \colorbox{\FancyVerbHighlightColor}{%
1875     \setlength{\fboxsep}{\FV@TmpLength}%
1876     \rlap{\strut#1}%
1877     \hspace{\linewidth}%
1878     \ifx\FV@RightListFrame\relax\else
1879       \hspace{-\FV@FrameSep}%
1880       \hspace{-\FV@FrameRule}%
1881     \fi
1882     \ifx\FV@LeftListFrame\relax\else
1883       \hspace{-\FV@FrameSep}%
1884       \hspace{-\FV@FrameRule}%
1885     \fi
1886   }%
1887   \hss
1888 }

```

`\FancyVerbHighlightLineMiddle` A middle line in a multi-line range.

```
1889 \let\FancyVerbHighlightLineMiddle\FancyVerbHighlightLineFirst
```

`\FancyVerbHighlightLineLast` The last line in a multi-line range.

```
1890 \let\FancyVerbHighlightLineLast\FancyVerbHighlightLineFirst
```


`\FancyVerbHighlightLineSingle` A single line not in a multi-line range.

```
1891 \let\FancyVerbHighlightLineSingle\FancyVerbHighlightLineFirst
```

`\FV@HighlightLinesPrep` Process the list of lines to highlight (if any). A macro is created for each line to be highlighted. During highlighting, a line is highlighted if the corresponding macro exists. All of the macro creating is ultimately within the current environment group so it stays local. `\FancyVerbHighlightLine` is `\let` to a version that will invoke the necessary logic.

```
1892 \def\FV@HighlightLinesPrep{%
1893   \ifx\FV@HighlightLinesList\@empty
1894   \else
1895     \let\FancyVerbHighlightLine\FV@HighlightLine
1896     \expandafter\FV@HighlightLinesPrep@i
1897   \fi}
1898 \def\FV@HighlightLinesPrep@i{%
1899   \renewcommand{\do}[1]{%
1900     \ifstrempy{##1}{\FV@HighlightLinesParse##1-\FV@Undefined}}%
1901   \expandafter\docsvlist\expandafter{\FV@HighlightLinesList}}
1902 \def\FV@HighlightLinesParse#1-#2\FV@Undefined{%
1903   \ifstrempy{#2}%
1904     {\FV@HighlightLinesParse@Single{#1}}%
1905     {\FV@HighlightLinesParse@Range{#1}#2\relax}}
1906 \def\FV@HighlightLinesParse@Single#1{%
1907   \expandafter\let\csname FV@HighlightLine:\detokenize{#1}\endcsname\relax}
1908 \newcounter{FV@HighlightLinesStart}
1909 \newcounter{FV@HighlightLinesStop}
1910 \def\FV@HighlightLinesParse@Range#1#2-{%
1911   \setcounter{FV@HighlightLinesStart}{#1}%
1912   \setcounter{FV@HighlightLinesStop}{#2}%
1913   \stepcounter{FV@HighlightLinesStop}%
1914   \FV@HighlightLinesParse@Range@Loop}
1915 \def\FV@HighlightLinesParse@Range@Loop{%
1916   \ifnum\value{FV@HighlightLinesStart}<\value{FV@HighlightLinesStop}\relax
1917     \expandafter\let\csname FV@HighlightLine:\arabic{FV@HighlightLinesStart}\endcsname\relax
1918     \stepcounter{FV@HighlightLinesStart}%
1919     \expandafter\FV@HighlightLinesParse@Range@Loop
1920   \fi}
1921 \g@addto@macro\FV@FormattingPrep@PreHook{\FV@HighlightLinesPrep}
```

12.12 Line breaking

The following code adds automatic line breaking functionality to `fancyvrb`'s `Verbatim` environment. Automatic breaks may be inserted after spaces, or before or after specified characters. Breaking before or after specified characters involves scanning each line token by token to insert `\discretionary` at all potential break locations.

12.12.1 Options and associated macros

Begin by defining keys, with associated macros, bools, and dimens.

`\FV@SetToWidthNChars` Set a dimen to the width of a given number of characters. This is used in setting several indentation-related dimensions.

```

1922 \newcount\FV@LoopCount
1923 \newbox\FV@NCharsBox
1924 \def\FV@SetToWidthNChars#1#2{%
1925   \FV@LoopCount=#2\relax
1926   \ifnum\FV@LoopCount>0
1927     \def\FV@NChars{%
1928       \loop
1929       \ifnum\FV@LoopCount>0
1930         \expandafter\def\expandafter\FV@NChars\expandafter{\FV@NChars x}%
1931       \fi
1932       \advance\FV@LoopCount by -1
1933       \ifnum\FV@LoopCount>0
1934         \repeat
1935       \setbox\FV@NCharsBox\hbox{\FV@NChars}%
1936       #1=\wd\FV@NCharsBox
1937     \else
1938       #1=0pt\relax
1939     \fi
1940 }

```

FV@breaklines Turn line breaking on or off. The `\FV@ListProcessLine` from `fancyvrb` is `\let` to a (patched) version of the original or a version that supports line breaks.

```

1941 \newbool{FV@breaklines}
1942 \define@booleankey{FV}{breaklines}%
1943 {\booltrue{FV@breaklines}}%
1944 \let\FV@ListProcessLine\FV@ListProcessLine@Break}%
1945 {\boolfalse{FV@breaklines}}%
1946 \let\FV@ListProcessLine\FV@ListProcessLine@NoBreak}
1947 \AtEndOfPackage{\fvset{breaklines=false}}

```

\FV@BreakLinesLuaTeXHook Fix hyphen handling under LuaTeX. `\automatichyphenmode=2` would work for environments, but doesn't seem to work inline. Instead, the active hyphen is redefined to `\mbox{-}`.

This is needed before `\@noligs` is ever used, so it is placed in `\FV@FormattingPrep@PreHook`.

```

1948 \def\FV@BreakLinesLuaTeXHook{%
1949   \expandafter\def\expandafter\@noligs\expandafter{\@noligs
1950     \begingroup\lccode`~=`-\lowercase{\endgroup\def~}{\leavevmode\kern\z@\mbox{-}}}}
1951 \ifcsname directlua\endcsname
1952   \ifx\directlua\relax
1953     \else
1954       \FV@AddToHook\FV@FormattingPrep@PreHook\FV@BreakLinesLuaTeXHook
1955     \fi
1956 \fi

```

\FV@BreakLinesIndentationHook A hook for performing on-the-fly indentation calculations when `breaklines=true`. This is used for all `*NChars` related indentation. It is important to use `\FV@FormattingPrep@PostHook` because it is always invoked *after* any font-related settings.

```

1957 \def\FV@BreakLinesIndentationHook{}
1958 \g@addto@macro\FV@FormattingPrep@PostHook{%
1959   \ifFV@breaklines
1960     \FV@BreakLinesIndentationHook
1961   \fi}

```

`\FV@BreakIndent` Indentation of continuation lines.

```
\FV@BreakIndentNChars 1962 \newdimen\FV@BreakIndent
1963 \newcount\FV@BreakIndentNChars
1964 \define@key{FV}{breakindent}{%
1965   \FV@BreakIndent=#1\relax
1966   \FV@BreakIndentNChars=0\relax}
1967 \define@key{FV}{breakindentnchars}{\FV@BreakIndentNChars=#1\relax}
1968 \g@addto@macro\FV@BreakLinesIndentationHook{%
1969   \ifnum\FV@BreakIndentNChars>0
1970     \FV@SetToWidthNChars{\FV@BreakIndent}{\FV@BreakIndentNChars}%
1971   \fi}
1972 \fvset{breakindentnchars=0}
```

`FV@breakautoindent` Auto indentation of continuation lines to indentation of original line. Adds to `\FV@BreakIndent`.

```
1973 \newbool{FV@breakautoindent}
1974 \define@booleankey{FV}{breakautoindent}%
1975   {\booltrue{FV@breakautoindent}}{\boolfalse{FV@breakautoindent}}
1976 \fvset{breakautoindent=true}
```

`\FancyVerbBreakSymbolLeft` The left-hand symbol indicating a break. Since breaking is done in such a way that a left-hand symbol will often be desired while a right-hand symbol may not be, a shorthand option `breaksymbol` is supplied. This shorthand convention is continued with other options applying to the left-hand symbol.

```
1977 \define@key{FV}{breaksymbolleft}{\def\FancyVerbBreakSymbolLeft{#1}}
1978 \define@key{FV}{breaksymbol}{\fvset{breaksymbolleft=#1}}
1979 \fvset{breaksymbolleft=\tiny\ensuremath{\hookrightarrow}}
```

`\FancyVerbBreakSymbolRight` The right-hand symbol indicating a break.

```
1980 \define@key{FV}{breaksymbolright}{\def\FancyVerbBreakSymbolRight{#1}}
1981 \fvset{breaksymbolright={}}
```

`\FV@BreakSymbolSepLeft` Separation of left break symbol from the text.

```
\FV@BreakSymbolSepLeftNChars 1982 \newdimen\FV@BreakSymbolSepLeft
1983 \newcount\FV@BreakSymbolSepLeftNChars
1984 \define@key{FV}{breaksymbolsepleft}{%
1985   \FV@BreakSymbolSepLeft=#1\relax
1986   \FV@BreakSymbolSepLeftNChars=0\relax}
1987 \define@key{FV}{breaksymbolsep}{\fvset{breaksymbolsepleft=#1}}
1988 \define@key{FV}{breaksymbolsepleftnchars}{\FV@BreakSymbolSepLeftNChars=#1\relax}
1989 \define@key{FV}{breaksymbolsepnchars}{\fvset{breaksymbolsepleftnchars=#1}}
1990 \g@addto@macro\FV@BreakLinesIndentationHook{%
1991   \ifnum\FV@BreakSymbolSepLeftNChars>0
1992     \FV@SetToWidthNChars{\FV@BreakSymbolSepLeft}{\FV@BreakSymbolSepLeftNChars}%
1993   \fi}
1994 \fvset{breaksymbolsepleftnchars=2}
```

`\FV@BreakSymbolSepRight` Separation of right break symbol from the text.

```
\FV@BreakSymbolSepRightNChars 1995 \newdimen\FV@BreakSymbolSepRight
1996 \newcount\FV@BreakSymbolSepRightNChars
1997 \define@key{FV}{breaksymbolsepright}{%
1998   \FV@BreakSymbolSepRight=#1\relax
1999   \FV@BreakSymbolSepRightNChars=0\relax}
```

```

2000 \define@key{FV}{breaksymbolseprightnchars}{\FV@BreakSymbolSepRightNChars=#1\relax}
2001 \g@addto@macro\FV@BreakLinesIndentationHook{%
2002   \ifnum\FV@BreakSymbolSepRightNChars>0
2003     \FV@SetToWidthNChars{\FV@BreakSymbolSepRight}{\FV@BreakSymbolSepRightNChars}%
2004   \fi}
2005 \fvset{breaksymbolseprightnchars=2}

```

`\FV@BreakSymbolIndentLeft` Additional left indentation to make room for the left break symbol.

```

\FV@BreakSymbolIndentLeftNChars 2006 \newdimen\FV@BreakSymbolIndentLeft
2007 \newcount\FV@BreakSymbolIndentLeftNChars
2008 \define@key{FV}{breaksymbolindentleft}{%
2009   \FV@BreakSymbolIndentLeft=#1\relax
2010   \FV@BreakSymbolIndentLeftNChars=0\relax}
2011 \define@key{FV}{breaksymbolindent}{\fvset{breaksymbolindentleft=#1}}
2012 \define@key{FV}{breaksymbolindentleftnchars}{\FV@BreakSymbolIndentLeftNChars=#1\relax}
2013 \define@key{FV}{breaksymbolindentnchars}{\fvset{breaksymbolindentleftnchars=#1}}
2014 \g@addto@macro\FV@BreakLinesIndentationHook{%
2015   \ifnum\FV@BreakSymbolIndentLeftNChars>0
2016     \FV@SetToWidthNChars{\FV@BreakSymbolIndentLeft}{\FV@BreakSymbolIndentLeftNChars}%
2017   \fi}
2018 \fvset{breaksymbolindentleftnchars=4}

```

`\FV@BreakSymbolIndentRight` Additional right indentation to make room for the right break symbol.

```

\FV@BreakSymbolIndentRightNChars 2019 \newdimen\FV@BreakSymbolIndentRight
2020 \newcount\FV@BreakSymbolIndentRightNChars
2021 \define@key{FV}{breaksymbolindentrightright}{%
2022   \FV@BreakSymbolIndentRight=#1\relax
2023   \FV@BreakSymbolIndentRightNChars=0\relax}
2024 \define@key{FV}{breaksymbolindentrightrightnchars}{\FV@BreakSymbolIndentRightNChars=#1\relax}
2025 \g@addto@macro\FV@BreakLinesIndentationHook{%
2026   \ifnum\FV@BreakSymbolIndentRightNChars>0
2027     \FV@SetToWidthNChars{\FV@BreakSymbolIndentRight}{\FV@BreakSymbolIndentRightNChars}%
2028   \fi}
2029 \fvset{breaksymbolindentrightrightnchars=4}

```

We need macros that contain the logic for typesetting the break symbols. By default, the symbol macros contain everything regarding the symbol and its typesetting, while these macros contain pure logic. The symbols should be wrapped in braces so that formatting commands (for example, `\tiny`) don't escape.

`\FancyVerbBreakSymbolLeftLogic` The left break symbol should only appear with continuation lines. Note that `linenumber` here refers to local line numbering for the broken line, *not* line numbering for all lines in the environment being typeset.

```

2030 \newcommand{\FancyVerbBreakSymbolLeftLogic}[1]{%
2031   \ifnum\value{linenumber}=1\relax\else{#1}\fi}

```

`FancyVerbLineBreakLast` We need a counter for keeping track of the local line number for the last segment of a broken line, so that we can avoid putting a right continuation symbol there. A line that is broken will ultimately be processed twice when there is a right continuation symbol, once to determine the local line numbering, and then again for actual insertion into the document.

```

2032 \newcounter{FancyVerbLineBreakLast}

```

`\FV@SetLineBreakLast` Store the local line number for the last continuation line.

```
2033 \newcommand{\FV@SetLineBreakLast}{%
2034   \setcounter{FancyVerbLineBreakLast}{\value{linenumber}}}
```

`FancyVerbBreakSymbolRightLogic` Only insert a right break symbol if not on the last continuation line.

```
2035 \newcommand{\FancyVerbBreakSymbolRightLogic}[1]{%
2036   \ifnum\value{linenumber}=\value{FancyVerbLineBreakLast}\relax\else{#1}\fi}
```

`\FancyVerbBreakStart` Macro that starts fine-tuned breaking (`breakanywhere`, `breakbefore`, `breakafter`) by examining a line token-by-token. Initially `\let` to `\relax`; later `\let` to `\FV@Break` as appropriate.

```
2037 \let\FancyVerbBreakStart\relax
```

`\FancyVerbBreakStop` Macro that stops the fine-tuned breaking region started by `\FancyVerbBreakStart`. Initially `\let` to `\relax`; later `\let` to `\FV@EndBreak` as appropriate.

```
2038 \let\FancyVerbBreakStop\relax
```

`\FV@Break@DefaultToken` Macro that controls default token handling between `\FancyVerbBreakStart` and `\FancyVerbBreakStop`. Initially `\let` to `\FV@Break@NBToken`, which does not insert breaks. Later `\let` to `\FV@Break@AnyToken` or `\FV@Break@BeforeAfterToken` if `breakanywhere` or `breakbefore/breakafter` are in use.

```
2039 \let\FV@Break@DefaultToken\FV@Break@NBToken
```

`FV@breakanywhere` Allow line breaking (almost) anywhere. Set `\FV@Break` and `\FV@EndBreak` to be used, and `\let` `\FV@Break@DefaultToken` to the appropriate macro.

```
2040 \newbool{FV@breakanywhere}
2041 \define@booleankey{FV}{breakanywhere}{%
2042   {\booltrue{FV@breakanywhere}}%
2043   \let\FancyVerbBreakStart\FV@Break
2044   \let\FancyVerbBreakStop\FV@EndBreak
2045   \let\FV@Break@DefaultToken\FV@Break@AnyToken}%
2046   {\boolfalse{FV@breakanywhere}}%
2047   \let\FancyVerbBreakStart\relax
2048   \let\FancyVerbBreakStop\relax
2049   \let\FV@Break@DefaultToken\FV@Break@NBToken}
2050 \fvset{breakanywhere=false}
```

`\FV@BreakBefore` Allow line breaking (almost) anywhere, but only before specified characters.

```
2051 \define@key{FV}{breakbefore}{%
2052   \ifstrempy{#1}%
2053   {\let\FV@BreakBefore@empty
2054     \let\FancyVerbBreakStart\relax
2055     \let\FancyVerbBreakStop\relax
2056     \let\FV@Break@DefaultToken\FV@Break@NBToken}%
2057   {\def\FV@BreakBefore{#1}%
2058     \let\FancyVerbBreakStart\FV@Break
2059     \let\FancyVerbBreakStop\FV@EndBreak
2060     \let\FV@Break@DefaultToken\FV@Break@BeforeAfterToken}%
2061   }
2062 \fvset{breakbefore={}}
```

`FV@breakbeforeinrun` Determine whether breaking before specified characters is always allowed before each individual character, or is only allowed before the first in a run of identical characters.

```

2063 \newbool{FV@breakbeforeinrun}
2064 \define@booleankey{FV}{breakbeforeinrun}%
2065 {\booltrue{FV@breakbeforeinrun}}%
2066 {\boolfalse{FV@breakbeforeinrun}}%
2067 \fvset{breakbeforeinrun=false}

```

`\FV@BreakBeforePrep` We need a way to break before characters if and only if they have been specified as breaking characters. It would be possible to do that via a nested conditional, but that would be messy. It is much simpler to create an empty macro whose name contains the character, and test for the existence of this macro. This needs to be done inside a `\begingroup... \endgroup` so that the macros do not have to be cleaned up manually. A good place to do this is in `\FV@FormattingPrep`, which is inside a group and before processing starts. The macro is added to `\FV@FormattingPrep@PreHook`, which contains `fvextra` extensions to `\FV@FormattingPrep`, after `\FV@BreakAfterPrep` is defined below.

The procedure here is a bit roundabout. We need to use `\FV@EscChars` to handle character escapes, but the character redefinitions need to be kept local, requiring that we work within a `\begingroup... \endgroup`. So we loop through the breaking tokens and assemble a macro that will itself define character macros. Only this defining macro is declared global, and it contains *expanded* characters so that there is no longer any dependence on `\FV@EscChars`.

`\FV@BreakBeforePrep@PygmentsHook` allows additional break preparation for Pygments-based packages such as `minted` and `pythontex`. When Pygments highlights code, it converts some characters into macros; they do not appear literally. As a result, for breaking to occur correctly, breaking macros need to be created for these character macros and not only for the literal characters themselves.

A pdfTeX-compatible version for working with UTF-8 is defined later, and `\FV@BreakBeforePrep` is `\let` to it under pdfTeX as necessary.

```

2068 \def\FV@BreakBeforePrep{%
2069   \ifx\FV@BreakBefore@empty\relax
2070   \else
2071     \gdef\FV@BreakBefore@Def{%
2072       \begingroup
2073       \def\FV@BreakBefore@Process##1##2\FV@Undefined{%
2074         \expandafter\FV@BreakBefore@Process@i\expandafter{##1}%
2075         \expandafter\ifx\expandafter\relax\detokenize{##2}\relax
2076         \else
2077           \FV@BreakBefore@Process##2\FV@Undefined
2078         \fi
2079       }%
2080       \def\FV@BreakBefore@Process@i##1{%
2081         \g@addto@macro\FV@BreakBefore@Def{%
2082           \@namedef{FV@BreakBefore@Token\detokenize{##1}}{}}%
2083       }%
2084       \FV@EscChars
2085       \expandafter\FV@BreakBefore@Process\FV@BreakBefore\FV@Undefined
2086     \endgroup
2087     \FV@BreakBefore@Def
2088     \FV@BreakBeforePrep@PygmentsHook

```

```

2089 \fi
2090 }
2091 \let\FV@BreakBeforePrep@PygmentsHook\relax

```

\FV@BreakAfter Allow line breaking (almost) anywhere, but only after specified characters.

```

2092 \define@key{FV}{breakafter}{%
2093 \ifstrempy{#1}%
2094 {\let\FV@BreakAfter\@empty
2095 \let\FancyVerbBreakStart\relax
2096 \let\FancyVerbBreakStop\relax
2097 \let\FV@Break@DefaultToken\FV@Break@NBToken}%
2098 {\def\FV@BreakAfter{#1}%
2099 \let\FancyVerbBreakStart\FV@Break
2100 \let\FancyVerbBreakStop\FV@EndBreak
2101 \let\FV@Break@DefaultToken\FV@Break@BeforeAfterToken}%
2102 }
2103 \fvset{breakafter={}}

```

FV@breakafterinrun Determine whether breaking after specified characters is always allowed after each individual character, or is only allowed after the last in a run of identical characters.

```

2104 \newbool{FV@breakafterinrun}
2105 \define@booleankey{FV}{breakafterinrun}{%
2106 {\booltrue{FV@breakafterinrun}}%
2107 {\boolfalse{FV@breakafterinrun}}%
2108 \fvset{breakafterinrun=false}

```

\FV@BreakAfterPrep This is the `breakafter` equivalent of `\FV@BreakBeforePrep`. It is also used within `\FV@FormattingPrep`. The order of `\FV@BreakBeforePrep` and `\FV@BreakAfterPrep` is important; `\FV@BreakAfterPrep` must always be second, because it checks for conflicts with `breakbefore`.

A pdfTeX-compatible version for working with UTF-8 is defined later, and `\FV@BreakAfterPrep` is `\let` to it under pdfTeX as necessary.

```

2109 \def\FV@BreakAfterPrep{%
2110 \ifx\FV@BreakAfter\@empty\relax
2111 \else
2112 \gdef\FV@BreakAfter@Def{}%
2113 \begingroup
2114 \def\FV@BreakAfter@Process##1##2\FV@Undefined{%
2115 \expandafter\FV@BreakAfter@Process@i\expandafter{##1}%
2116 \expandafter\ifx\expandafter\relax\detokenize{##2}\relax
2117 \else
2118 \FV@BreakAfter@Process##2\FV@Undefined
2119 \fi
2120 }%
2121 \def\FV@BreakAfter@Process@i##1{%
2122 \ifcsname FV@BreakBefore@Token\detokenize{##1}\endcsname
2123 \ifbool{FV@breakbeforeinrun}%
2124 {\ifbool{FV@breakafterinrun}%
2125 {}%
2126 {\PackageError{fvextra}%
2127 {Conflicting breakbeforeinrun and breakafterinrun for "\detokenize{##1}"}%
2128 {Conflicting breakbeforeinrun and breakafterinrun for "\detokenize{##1}"}}}%
2129 {\ifbool{FV@breakafterinrun}%

```



```

2130         {\PackageError{fvextra}%
2131          {Conflicting breakbeforeinrun and breakafterinrun for "\detokenize{##1}"}%
2132          {Conflicting breakbeforeinrun and breakafterinrun for "\detokenize{##1}"}%
2133         {}}%
2134     \fi
2135     \g@addto@macro\FV@BreakAfter@Def{%
2136       \@namedef{FV@BreakAfter@Token\detokenize{##1}}{}}%
2137   }%
2138   \FV@EscChars
2139   \expandafter\FV@BreakAfter@Process\FV@BreakAfter\FV@Undefined
2140   \endgroup
2141   \FV@BreakAfter@Def
2142   \FV@BreakAfterPrep@PygmentsHook
2143 \fi
2144 }
2145 \let\FV@BreakAfterPrep@PygmentsHook\relax

```

Now that `\FV@BreakBeforePrep` and `\FV@BreakAfterPrep` are defined, add them to `\FV@FormattingPrep@PreHook`, which is the `fvextra` extension to `\FV@FormattingPrep`. The ordering here is important, since `\FV@BreakAfterPrep` contains compatibility checks with `\FV@BreakBeforePrep`, and thus must be used after it. Also, we have to check for the pdfTeX engine with `inputenc` using UTF-8, and use the UTF macros instead when that is the case.

```

2146 \g@addto@macro\FV@FormattingPrep@PreHook{%
2147   \ifFV@pdfTeXinputenc
2148     \ifdefstring{\inputencodingname}{utf8}%
2149     {\let\FV@BreakBeforePrep\FV@BreakBeforePrep@UTF
2150      \let\FV@BreakAfterPrep\FV@BreakAfterPrep@UTF}%
2151   }%
2152 \fi
2153 \FV@BreakBeforePrep\FV@BreakAfterPrep}

```

`\FancyVerbBreakAnywhereSymbolPre` The pre-break symbol for breaks introduced by `breakanywhere`. That is, the symbol before breaks that occur between characters, rather than at spaces.

```

2154 \define@key{FV}{breakanywheresymbolpre}{%
2155   \ifstrempy{#1}%
2156   {\def\FancyVerbBreakAnywhereSymbolPre{}}%
2157   {\def\FancyVerbBreakAnywhereSymbolPre{\hbox{#1}}}}
2158 \fvset{breakanywheresymbolpre={\,\footnotesize\ensuremath{\_}\rfloor}}

```

`\FancyVerbBreakAnywhereSymbolPost` The post-break symbol for breaks introduced by `breakanywhere`.

```

2159 \define@key{FV}{breakanywheresymbolpost}{%
2160   \ifstrempy{#1}%
2161   {\def\FancyVerbBreakAnywhereSymbolPost{}}%
2162   {\def\FancyVerbBreakAnywhereSymbolPost{\hbox{#1}}}}
2163 \fvset{breakanywheresymbolpost={}}

```

`\FancyVerbBreakBeforeSymbolPre` The pre-break symbol for breaks introduced by `breakbefore`.

```

2164 \define@key{FV}{breakbeforesymbolpre}{%
2165   \ifstrempy{#1}%
2166   {\def\FancyVerbBreakBeforeSymbolPre{}}%
2167   {\def\FancyVerbBreakBeforeSymbolPre{\hbox{#1}}}}
2168 \fvset{breakbeforesymbolpre={\,\footnotesize\ensuremath{\_}\rfloor}}

```


`\FancyVerbBreakBeforeSymbolPost` The post-break symbol for breaks introduced by `breakbefore`.

```

2169 \define@key{FV}{breakbeforesymbolpost}{%
2170   \ifstrempy{#1}%
2171   {\def\FancyVerbBreakBeforeSymbolPost{}}%
2172   {\def\FancyVerbBreakBeforeSymbolPost{\hbox{#1}}}}
2173 \fvset{breakbeforesymbolpost={}}
```

`\FancyVerbBreakAfterSymbolPre` The pre-break symbol for breaks introduced by `breakafter`.

```

2174 \define@key{FV}{breakaftersymbolpre}{%
2175   \ifstrempy{#1}%
2176   {\def\FancyVerbBreakAfterSymbolPre{}}%
2177   {\def\FancyVerbBreakAfterSymbolPre{\hbox{#1}}}}
2178 \fvset{breakaftersymbolpre={\,\footnotesize\ensuremath{\_ \rfloor}}}
```

`\FancyVerbBreakAfterSymbolPost` The post-break symbol for breaks introduced by `breakafter`.

```

2179 \define@key{FV}{breakaftersymbolpost}{%
2180   \ifstrempy{#1}%
2181   {\def\FancyVerbBreakAfterSymbolPost{}}%
2182   {\def\FancyVerbBreakAfterSymbolPost{\hbox{#1}}}}
2183 \fvset{breakaftersymbolpost={}}
```

`\FancyVerbBreakAnywhereBreak` The macro governing breaking for `breakanywhere=true`.

```

2184 \newcommand{\FancyVerbBreakAnywhereBreak}{%
2185   \discretionary{\FancyVerbBreakAnywhereSymbolPre}%
2186   {\FancyVerbBreakAnywhereSymbolPost}{}}
```

`\FancyVerbBreakBeforeBreak` The macro governing breaking for `breakbefore=true`.

```

2187 \newcommand{\FancyVerbBreakBeforeBreak}{%
2188   \discretionary{\FancyVerbBreakBeforeSymbolPre}%
2189   {\FancyVerbBreakBeforeSymbolPost}{}}
```

`\FancyVerbBreakAfterBreak` The macro governing breaking for `breakafter=true`.

```

2190 \newcommand{\FancyVerbBreakAfterBreak}{%
2191   \discretionary{\FancyVerbBreakAfterSymbolPre}%
2192   {\FancyVerbBreakAfterSymbolPost}{}}
```

`breaknonspaceingroup` `FV@breaknonspaceingroup` When inserting breaks, insert breaks within groups (typically `{...}`) but depends on `commandchars` instead of skipping over them. This isn't the default because it is incompatible with many macros since it inserts breaks into all arguments. For those cases, redefining macros to use `\FancyVerbBreakStart... \FancyVerbBreakStop` to insert breaks is better.

```

2193 \newbool{FV@breaknonspaceingroup}
2194 \define@booleankey{FV}{breaknonspaceingroup}%
2195   {\booltrue{FV@breaknonspaceingroup}}%
2196   {\boolfalse{FV@breaknonspaceingroup}}
2197 \fvset{breaknonspaceingroup=false}
```

12.12.2 Line breaking implementation

Helper macros

`\FV@LineBox` A box for saving a line of text, so that its dimensions may be determined and thus we may figure out if it needs line breaking.

```

2198 \newsavebox{\FV@LineBox}
```

`\FV@LineIndentBox` A box for saving the indentation of code, so that its dimensions may be determined for use in auto-indentation of continuation lines.

```
2199 \newsavebox{\FV@LineIndentBox}
```

`\FV@LineIndentChars` A macro for storing the indentation characters, if any, of a given line. For use in auto-indentation of continuation lines

```
2200 \let\FV@LineIndentChars\@empty
```

`\FV@GetLineIndent` A macro that takes a line and determines the indentation, storing the indentation chars in `\FV@LineIndentChars`.

```
2201 \def\FV@GetLineIndent{%
2202   \@ifnextchar\FV@Sentinel
2203   {\FV@GetLineIndent@End}%
2204   {\ifx\@let@token\FV@FVSpaceToken
2205     \let\FV@Next\FV@GetLineIndent@Whitespace
2206     \else\ifx\@let@token\FV@FVTabToken
2207       \let\FV@Next\FV@GetLineIndent@Whitespace
2208       \else\ifcsname FV@PYG@Redefed\endcsname
2209         \ifx\@let@token\FV@PYG@Redefed
2210           \let\FV@Next\FV@GetLineIndent@Pygments
2211         \else
2212           \let\FV@Next\FV@GetLineIndent@End
2213         \fi
2214       \else
2215         \let\FV@Next\FV@GetLineIndent@End
2216       \fi\fi\fi
2217     \FV@Next}}
2218 \def\FV@GetLineIndent@End#1\FV@Sentinel{}
2219 \def\FV@GetLineIndent@Whitespace#1{%
2220   \expandafter\def\expandafter\FV@LineIndentChars\expandafter{\FV@LineIndentChars#1}%
2221   \FV@GetLineIndent}
2222 \def\FV@GetLineIndent@Pygments#1#2#3{%
2223   \FV@GetLineIndent#3}
```

Tab expansion

The `fancyvrb` option `obeytabs` uses a clever algorithm involving boxing and unboxing to expand tabs based on tab stops rather than a fixed number of equivalent space characters. (See the definitions of `\FV@ObeyTabs` and `\FV@TrueTab` in section 12.10.4.) Unfortunately, since this involves `\hbox`, it interferes with the line breaking algorithm, and an alternative is required.

There are probably many ways tab expansion could be performed while still allowing line breaks. The current approach has been chosen because it is relatively straightforward and yields identical results to the case without line breaks. Line breaking involves saving a line in a box, and determining whether the box is too wide. During this process, if `obeytabs=true`, `\FV@TrueTabSaveWidth`, which is inside `\FV@TrueTab`, is `\let` to a version that saves the width of every tab in a macro. When a line is broken, all tabs within it will then use a variant of `\FV@TrueTab` that sequentially retrieves the saved widths. This maintains the exact behavior of the case without line breaks.

Note that the special version of `\FV@TrueTab` is based on the `fvextra` patched version of `\FV@TrueTab`, not on the original `\FV@TrueTab` defined in `fancyvrb`.

`\FV@TrueTab@UseWidth` Version of `\FV@TrueTab` that uses pre-computed tab widths.

```
2224 \def\FV@TrueTab@UseWidth{%
2225   \@tempdima=\csname FV@TrueTab:Width\arabic{FV@TrueTabCounter}\endcsname sp\relax
2226   \stepcounter{FV@TrueTabCounter}%
2227   \hbox to\@tempdima{\hss\FV@TabChar}}
```

Line scanning and break insertion macros

The strategy here is to scan through text token by token, inserting potential breaks at appropriate points. The final text with breaks inserted is stored in `\FV@BreakBuffer`, which is ultimately passed on to a wrapper macro like `\FancyVerbFormatText` or `\FancyVerbFormatInline`.

If user macros insert breaks via `\FancyVerbBreakStart... \FancyVerbBreakStop`, this invokes an additional scanning/insertion pass within each macro after expansion. The scanning/insertion only applies to the part of the expanded macros wrapped in `\FancyVerbBreakStart... \FancyVerbBreakStop`. At the time this occurs, during macro processing, text will already be wrapped in a wrapper macro like `\FancyVerbFormatText` or `\FancyVerbFormatInline`. That is, the built-in break insertion occurs before any typesetting, but user macro break insertion occurs during typesetting.

Token comparison is currently based on `\ifx`. This is sufficient for verbatim text but a comparison based on `\detokenize` might be better for cases when `commandchars` is in use. For example, with `commandchars` characters other than the curly braces `{}` might be the group tokens.

It would be possible to insert each token/group into the document immediately after it is scanned, instead of accumulating them in a “buffer.” But that would interfere with macros. Even in the current approach, macros that take optional arguments are problematic, since with some settings breaks will interfere with optional arguments.⁹

The last token is tracked with `\FV@LastToken`, to allow lookbehind when breaking by groups of identical characters. `\FV@LastToken` is `\let to \FV@Undefined` any time the last token was something that shouldn’t be compared against (for example, a non-empty group), and it is not reset whenever the last token may be ignored (for example, `{}`). When setting `\FV@LastToken`, it is vital always to use `\let\FV@LastToken=...` so that `\let\FV@LastToken==` will work (so that the equals sign = won’t break things).

`FV@BreakBufferDepth` Track buffer depth while inserting breaks. Some macros and command sequences require recursive processing. For example, groups `{...}` (with `commandchars` and `breaknonspaceingroup`), `math`, and nested `\FancyVerbBreakStart... \FancyVerbBreakStop`. Depth starts at zero. The current buffer at depth n is always `\FV@BreakBuffer`, with other buffers `\FV@BreakBuffer<n>` etc. named via `\csname` to allow for the integer.

```
2228 \newcounter{FV@BreakBufferDepth}
```

`\FV@BreakBuffer@Append` Append to `\FV@BreakBuffer`.

```
2229 \def\FV@BreakBuffer@Append#1{%
```

⁹Through a suitable definition that tracks the current state and looks for square brackets, this might be circumvented. Then again, in verbatim contexts, macro use should be minimal, so the restriction to macros without optional arguments should generally not be an issue.

```
2230 \expandafter\def\expandafter\FV@BreakBuffer\expandafter{\FV@BreakBuffer#1}}
```

\FV@BreakBufferStart Create a new buffer, either at the beginning of scanning or during recursion. The single mandatory argument is the macro for handling tokens, which is `\let to \FV@Break@Token`. An intermediate `\FV@BreakBufferStart@i` is used to optimize `\ifx` comparisons for `\FV@BreakBufferStart` during scanning.

For recursion, `\FV@BreakBuffer<n>` and `\FV@Break@Token<n>` store the state (buffer and token handling macro) immediately prior to recursion with depth `<n>`.

```
2231 \def\FV@BreakBufferStart{%
2232   \FV@BreakBufferStart@i}
2233 \def\FV@BreakBufferStart@i#1{%
2234   \ifnum\value{FV@BreakBufferDepth}>0\relax
2235     \expandafter\let\csname FV@BreakBuffer\arabic{FV@BreakBufferDepth}\endcsname
2236     \FV@BreakBuffer
2237     \expandafter\let\csname FV@Break@Token\arabic{FV@BreakBufferDepth}\endcsname
2238     \FV@Break@Token
2239   \fi
2240   \def\FV@BreakBuffer{}%
2241   \let\FV@Break@Token=#1%
2242   \stepcounter{FV@BreakBufferDepth}%
2243   \let\FV@LastToken=\FV@Undefined
2244   \FV@Break@Scan}
```

FV@UserMacroBreaks Whether a user macro is inserting breaks, as opposed to `fvextra`'s standard scanning routine. When breaks come from `fvextra`, `\FV@BreakBufferStop` does nothing with `\FV@BreakBuffer` at buffer depth 0, since `\FV@InsertBreaks` handles buffer insertion. When breaks come from user macros, `\FV@BreakBufferStop` needs to insert `\FV@BreakBuffer` at buffer depth 0.

```
2245 \newbool{FV@UserMacroBreaks}
```

\FV@BreakBufferStop Complete the current buffer. The single mandatory argument is a wrapper macro for `\FV@BreakBuffer`'s contents (for example, insert recursively scanned group into braces `{...}`). If the mandatory argument is empty, no wrapper is used.

For `fvextra`'s standard scanning: If this is the main buffer (depth 0), stop scanning—which ultimately allows `\FV@BreakBuffer` to be handled by `\FV@InsertBreaks`. For user macros: Insert `\FV@BreakBuffer` at buffer depth 0. Otherwise for both cases: Append the current buffer to the previous buffer, and continue scanning.

An intermediate `\FV@BreakBufferStop@i` is used to optimize `\ifx` comparisons for `\FV@BreakBufferStop` during scanning.

```
2246 \def\FV@BreakBufferStop{%
2247   \FV@BreakBufferStop@i}
2248 \def\FV@BreakBufferStop@i#1{%
2249   \addtocounter{FV@BreakBufferDepth}{-1}%
2250   \let\FV@LastToken=\FV@Undefined
2251   \ifnum\value{FV@BreakBufferDepth}<0\relax
2252     \PackageError{fvextra}%
2253     {Line break insertion error (extra \string\FancyVerbBreakStop?)}%
2254     {Line break insertion error (extra \string\FancyVerbBreakStop?)}%
2255     \def\FV@BreakBuffer{}%
2256   \fi
2257   \ifnum\value{FV@BreakBufferDepth}>0\relax
```

```

2258 \expandafter\@firstoftwo
2259 \else
2260 \expandafter\@secondoftwo
2261 \fi
2262 {\expandafter\FV@BreakBufferStop@ii\expandafter{\FV@BreakBuffer}{#1}}%
2263 {\ifbool{FV@UserMacroBreaks}%
2264   {\expandafter\let\expandafter\FV@BreakBuffer\expandafter\FV@Undefined\FV@BreakBuffer}%
2265   {}}}
2266 \def\FV@BreakBufferStop@ii#1#2{%
2267 \ifstrempy{#2}%
2268   {\FV@BreakBufferStop@iii{#1}}%
2269   {\expandafter\FV@BreakBufferStop@iii\expandafter{#2{#1}}}}
2270 \def\FV@BreakBufferStop@iii#1{%
2271 \expandafter\let\expandafter\FV@BreakBufferUpLevel
2272   \csname FV@BreakBuffer\arabic{FV@BreakBufferDepth}\endcsname
2273 \expandafter\def\expandafter\FV@BreakBuffer\expandafter{\FV@BreakBufferUpLevel#1}%
2274 \expandafter\let\expandafter\FV@Break@Token
2275   \csname FV@Break@Token\arabic{FV@BreakBufferDepth}\endcsname
2276 \FV@Break@Scan}

```

`\FV@InsertBreaks` This inserts breaks within text (#2) and stores the result in `\FV@BreakBuffer`. Then it invokes a macro (#1) on the result. That allows `\FancyVerbFormatInline` and `\FancyVerbFormatText` to operate on the final text (with breaks) directly, rather than being given text without breaks or text wrapped with macros that will (potentially recursively) insert breaks. (Breaks inserted by user macros are not yet present, though, since they are only inserted—potentially recursively—during macro processing.)

The initial `\ifx` skips break insertion when break insertion is turned off (`\FancyVerbBreakStart` is `\relax`).

The current definition of `\FV@Break@Token` is swapped for a UTF-8 compatible one under pdfTeX when necessary. In what follows, the default macros are defined after `\FV@Break`, since they make the algorithms simpler to understand. The more complex UTF variants are defined afterward.

```

2277 \def\FV@InsertBreaks#1#2{%
2278 \ifx\FancyVerbBreakStart\relax
2279   \expandafter\@firstoftwo
2280 \else
2281   \expandafter\@secondoftwo
2282 \fi
2283   {#1{#2}}%
2284   {\ifFV@pdfTeXinputenc
2285     \ifdefstring{\inputencodingname}{utf8}%
2286     {\ifx\FV@Break@DefaultToken\FV@Break@AnyToken
2287       \let\FV@Break@DefaultToken\FV@Break@AnyToken@UTF
2288     \else
2289       \ifx\FV@Break@DefaultToken\FV@Break@BeforeAfterToken
2290       \let\FV@Break@DefaultToken\FV@Break@BeforeAfterToken@UTF
2291     \fi
2292     \fi}%
2293   }%
2294 \fi
2295 \setcounter{FV@BreakBufferDepth}{0}%
2296 \boolfalse{FV@UserMacroBreaks}%

```

```

2297 \FancyVerbBreakStart#2\FancyVerbBreakStop
2298 \setcounter{FV@BreakBufferDepth}{0}%
2299 \booltrue{FV@UserMacroBreaks}%
2300 \expandafter\FV@InsertBreaks@i\expandafter{\FV@BreakBuffer}{#1}}
2301 \def\FV@InsertBreaks@i#1#2{%
2302 \let\FV@BreakBuffer\FV@Undefined
2303 #2{#1}}

```

\FV@Break The entry macro for break insertion. Whatever is delimited (after expansion) by `\FV@Break... \FV@endBreak` will be scanned token by token/group by group, and accumulated (with any added breaks) in `\FV@BreakBuffer`. After scanning is complete, `\FV@BreakBuffer` will be inserted.

```

2304 \def\FV@Break{%
2305 \FV@BreakBufferStart{\FV@Break@DefaultToken}}

```

\FV@endBreak

```

2306 \def\FV@endBreak{%
2307 \FV@BreakBufferStop{}}

```

\FV@Break@Scan Look ahead via `\@ifnextchar`. Don't do anything if we're at the end of the region to be scanned. Otherwise, invoke a macro to deal with what's next based on whether it is math, or a group, or something else.

This and some following macros are defined inside of groups to ensure proper catcodes.

The check against `\FV@BreakBufferStart` should typically not be necessary; it is included for completeness and to allow for future extensions and customization. `\FV@BreakBufferStart` is only inserted raw (rather than wrapped in `\FancyVerbBreakStart`) in token processing macros, where it initiates (or restarts) scanning and is not itself scanned.

```

2308 \begingroup
2309 \catcode`\$=3
2310 \gdef\FV@Break@Scan{%
2311 \@ifnextchar\FancyVerbBreakStart%
2312 {}%
2313 {\ifx\@let@token\FancyVerbBreakStop
2314 \let\FV@Break@Next\relax
2315 \else\ifx\@let@token\FV@BreakBufferStart
2316 \let\FV@Break@Next\relax
2317 \else\ifx\@let@token\FV@BreakBufferStop
2318 \let\FV@Break@Next\relax
2319 \else\ifx\@let@token$
2320 \let\FV@Break@Next\FV@Break@Math
2321 \else\ifx\@let@token\bgroup
2322 \let\FV@Break@Next\FV@Break@Group
2323 \else
2324 \let\FV@Break@Next\FV@Break@Token
2325 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi
2326 \FV@Break@Next}}
2327 \endgroup

```

\FV@Break@Math Grab an entire math span, and insert it into `\FV@BreakBuffer`. Due to grouping, this works even when math contains things like `\text{${x$}`. After dealing with the math span, continue scanning.

```

2328 \begingroup
2329 \catcode`\$=3%
2330 \gdef\FV@Break@Math$#1${%
2331   \FV@Break@BufferStart{\FV@Break@NBToken}#1\FV@Break@BufferStop{\FV@Break@MathTemplate}}
2332 \gdef\FV@Break@MathTemplate#1{#1$}
2333 \endgroup

```

`\FV@Break@Group` Grab the group, and insert it into `\FV@Break@Buffer` (as a group) before continuing scanning.

```

2334 \def\FV@Break@Group#1{%
2335   \ifstrempy{#1}%
2336   {\FV@Break@Buffer@Append{}}%
2337   \FV@Break@Scan}%
2338   {\ifbool{FV@breaknonspaceingroup}%
2339    {\FV@Break@BufferStart{\FV@Break@DefaultToken}%
2340     #1\FV@Break@BufferStop{\FV@Break@GroupTemplate}}%
2341    {\FV@Break@BufferStart{\FV@Break@NBToken}%
2342     #1\FV@Break@BufferStop{\FV@Break@GroupTemplate}}}}
2343 \def\FV@Break@GroupTemplate#1{#1}

```

`\FV@Break@NBToken` Append token to buffer while adding no breaks (NB) and reset last token.

```

2344 \def\FV@Break@NBToken#1{%
2345   \FV@Break@Buffer@Append{#1}%
2346   \let\FV@LastToken=\FV@Undefined
2347   \FV@Break@Scan}

```

`\FV@Break@AnyToken` Deal with breaking around any token. This doesn't break macros with *mandatory* arguments, because `\FancyVerbBreakAnywhereBreak` is inserted *before* the token. Groups themselves are added without any special handling. So a macro would end up right next to its original arguments, without anything being inserted. Optional arguments will cause this approach to fail; there is currently no attempt to identify them, since that is a much harder problem.

If it is ever necessary, it would be possible to create a more sophisticated version involving catcode checks via `\ifcat`. Something like this:

```

%\begingroup
%\catcode`\a=11%
%\catcode`\+=12%
%\gdef\FV@Break...
% \ifcat\noexpand#1a%
%   \FV@Break@Buffer@Append...
% \else
%...
%\endgroup
%
```

```

2348 \def\FV@Break@AnyToken#1{%
2349   \ifx\FV@FVSpaceToken#1\relax
2350     \expandafter\@firstoftwo
2351   \else
2352     \expandafter\@secondoftwo
2353   \fi

```



```

2354 {\let\FV@LastToken=#1\FV@BreakBuffer@Append{#1}\FV@Break@Scan}%
2355 {\ifx\FV@LastToken\FV@FVSpaceToken
2356   \expandafter\@firstoftwo
2357   \else
2358   \expandafter\@secondoftwo
2359   \fi
2360   {\let\FV@LastToken=#1%
2361    \FV@BreakBuffer@Append{#1}\FV@Break@Scan}%
2362   {\let\FV@LastToken=#1%
2363    \FV@BreakBuffer@Append{\FancyVerbBreakAnywhereBreak#1}\FV@Break@Scan}}}}

```

`\FV@Break@BeforeAfterToken` Deal with breaking around only specified tokens. This is a bit trickier. We only break if a macro corresponding to the token exists. We also need to check whether the specified token should be grouped, that is, whether breaks are allowed between identical characters. All of this has to be written carefully so that nothing is accidentally inserted into the stream for future scanning.

Dealing with tokens followed by empty groups (for example, `\x{}`) is particularly challenging when we want to avoid breaks between identical characters. When a token is followed by a group, we need to save the current token for later reference (`\x` in the example), then capture and save the following group, and then—only if the group was empty—see if the following token is identical to the old saved token.

The `\csname @let@token\endcsname` prevents issues if `\@let@token` is ever `\else` or `\fi`.

```

2364 \def\FV@Break@BeforeAfterToken#1{%
2365   \ifcsname FV@BreakBefore@Token\detokenize{#1}\endcsname
2366     \let\FV@Break@Next\FV@Break@BeforeTokenBreak
2367   \else
2368     \ifcsname FV@BreakAfter@Token\detokenize{#1}\endcsname
2369       \let\FV@Break@Next\FV@Break@AfterTokenBreak
2370     \else
2371       \let\FV@Break@Next\FV@Break@BeforeAfterTokenNoBreak
2372     \fi
2373   \fi
2374   \FV@Break@Next{#1}%
2375 }
2376 \def\FV@Break@BeforeAfterTokenNoBreak#1{%
2377   \FV@BreakBuffer@Append{#1}%
2378   \let\FV@LastToken=#1%
2379   \FV@Break@Scan}
2380 \def\FV@Break@BeforeTokenBreak#1{%
2381   \ifbool{FV@breakbeforeinrun}%
2382     {\ifcsname FV@BreakAfter@Token\detokenize{#1}\endcsname
2383      \ifx#1\FV@FVSpaceToken
2384        \FV@BreakBuffer@Append{\FancyVerbSpaceBreak}%
2385      \else
2386        \FV@BreakBuffer@Append{\FancyVerbBreakBeforeBreak}%
2387      \fi
2388      \let\FV@Break@Next\FV@Break@BeforeTokenBreak@AfterRescan
2389      \def\FV@RescanToken{#1}%
2390    \else
2391      \ifx#1\FV@FVSpaceToken
2392        \FV@BreakBuffer@Append{\FancyVerbSpaceBreak#1}%
2393      \else

```



```

2394     \FV@BreakBuffer@Append{\FancyVerbBreakBeforeBreak#1}%
2395     \fi
2396     \let\FV@Break@Next\FV@Break@Scan
2397     \let\FV@LastToken=#1%
2398     \fi}%
2399   {\ifx#1\FV@LastToken\relax
2400     \ifcsname FV@BreakAfter@Token\detokenize{#1}\endcsname
2401     \let\FV@Break@Next\FV@Break@BeforeTokenBreak@AfterRescan
2402     \def\FV@RescanToken{#1}%
2403     \else
2404     \FV@BreakBuffer@Append{#1}%
2405     \let\FV@Break@Next\FV@Break@Scan
2406     \let\FV@LastToken=#1%
2407     \fi
2408   \else
2409     \ifcsname FV@BreakAfter@Token\detokenize{#1}\endcsname
2410     \ifx#1\FV@FVSpaceToken
2411     \FV@BreakBuffer@Append{\FancyVerbSpaceBreak}%
2412     \else
2413     \FV@BreakBuffer@Append{\FancyVerbBreakBeforeBreak}%
2414     \fi
2415     \let\FV@Break@Next\FV@Break@BeforeTokenBreak@AfterRescan
2416     \def\FV@RescanToken{#1}%
2417     \else
2418     \ifx#1\FV@FVSpaceToken
2419     \FV@BreakBuffer@Append{\FancyVerbSpaceBreak#1}%
2420     \else
2421     \FV@BreakBuffer@Append{\FancyVerbBreakBeforeBreak#1}%
2422     \fi
2423     \let\FV@Break@Next\FV@Break@Scan
2424     \let\FV@LastToken=#1%
2425     \fi
2426     \fi}%
2427   \FV@Break@Next}
2428 \def\FV@Break@BeforeTokenBreak@AfterRescan{%
2429 \expandafter\FV@Break@AfterTokenBreak\FV@RescanToken}
2430 \def\FV@Break@AfterTokenBreak#1{%
2431 \let\FV@LastToken=#1%
2432 \@ifnextchar\FV@FVSpaceToken%
2433 {\ifx#1\FV@FVSpaceToken
2434 \expandafter\@firstoftwo
2435 \else
2436 \expandafter\@secondoftwo
2437 \fi
2438 {\FV@Break@AfterTokenBreak@i{#1}}%
2439 {\FV@BreakBuffer@Append{#1}%
2440 \FV@Break@Scan}}%
2441 {\FV@Break@AfterTokenBreak@i{#1}}}
2442 \def\FV@Break@AfterTokenBreak@i#1{%
2443 \ifbool{FV@breakafterinrun}%
2444 {\ifx#1\FV@FVSpaceToken
2445 \FV@BreakBuffer@Append{#1\FancyVerbSpaceBreak}%
2446 \else
2447 \FV@BreakBuffer@Append{#1\FancyVerbBreakAfterBreak}%

```

```

2448 \fi
2449 \let\FV@Break@Next\FV@Break@Scan}%
2450 {\ifx\@let@token#1\relax
2451 \FV@BreakBuffer@Append{#1}%
2452 \let\FV@Break@Next\FV@Break@Scan
2453 \else
2454 \expandafter\ifx\csname @let@token\endcsname\bgroup\relax
2455 \FV@BreakBuffer@Append{#1}%
2456 \let\FV@Break@Next\FV@Break@AfterTokenBreak@Group
2457 \else
2458 \ifx#1\FV@FVSpaceToken
2459 \FV@BreakBuffer@Append{#1\FancyVerbSpaceBreak}%
2460 \else
2461 \FV@BreakBuffer@Append{#1\FancyVerbBreakAfterBreak}%
2462 \fi
2463 \let\FV@Break@Next\FV@Break@Scan
2464 \fi
2465 \fi}%
2466 \FV@Break@Next
2467 }
2468 \def\FV@Break@AfterTokenBreak@Group#1{%
2469 \ifstrempy{#1}%
2470 {\FV@BreakBuffer@Append{}}%
2471 \@ifnextchar\FV@LastToken%
2472 {\FV@Break@Scan}%
2473 {\ifx\FV@LastToken\FV@FVSpaceToken
2474 \FV@BreakBuffer@Append{\FancyVerbSpaceBreak}%
2475 \else
2476 \FV@BreakBuffer@Append{\FancyVerbBreakAfterBreak}%
2477 \fi
2478 \FV@Break@Scan}}%
2479 {\ifx\FV@LastToken\FV@FVSpaceToken
2480 \FV@BreakBuffer@Append{\FancyVerbSpaceBreak}%
2481 \else
2482 \FV@BreakBuffer@Append{\FancyVerbBreakAfterBreak}%
2483 \fi
2484 \FV@Break@Group{#1}}}

```

Line scanning and break insertion macros for pdfTeX with UTF-8

The macros above work with the XeTeX and LuaTeX engines and are also fine for pdfTeX with 8-bit character encodings. Unfortunately, pdfTeX works with multi-byte UTF-8 code points at the byte level, making things significantly trickier. The code below re-implements the macros in a manner compatible with the `inputenc` package with option `utf8`. Note that there is no attempt for compatibility with `utf8x`; `utf8` has been significantly improved in recent years and should be sufficient in the vast majority of cases. And implementing variants for `utf8` was already sufficiently painful.

Create macros conditionally:

```
2485 \ifFV@pdfTeXinputenc
```

`\FV@BreakBeforePrep@UTF` We need UTF variants of the `breakbefore` and `breakafter` prep macros. These are only ever used with `inputenc` with UTF-8. There is no need for encoding checks

here; checks are performed in \FV@FormattingPrep@PreHook (checks are inserted into it after the non-UTF macro definitions).

```

2486 \def\FV@BreakBeforePrep@UTF{%
2487   \ifx\FV@BreakBefore\@empty\relax
2488   \else
2489     \gdef\FV@BreakBefore@Def{%
2490       \begingroup
2491       \def\FV@BreakBefore@Process##1{%
2492         \ifcsname FV@U8:\detokenize{##1}\endcsname
2493         \expandafter\let\expandafter\FV@Break@Next\csname FV@U8:\detokenize{##1}\endcsname
2494         \let\FV@UTF@octets@after\FV@BreakBefore@Process@ii
2495         \else
2496           \ifx##1\FV@Undefined
2497             \let\FV@Break@Next\@gobble
2498           \else
2499             \let\FV@Break@Next\FV@BreakBefore@Process@i
2500           \fi
2501         \fi
2502         \FV@Break@Next##1%
2503       }%
2504       \def\FV@BreakBefore@Process@i##1{%
2505         \expandafter\FV@BreakBefore@Process@ii\expandafter{##1}%
2506       }%
2507       \def\FV@BreakBefore@Process@ii##1{%
2508         \g@addto@macro\FV@BreakBefore@Def{%
2509           \@namedef{FV@BreakBefore@Token\detokenize{##1}}{}}%
2510         \FV@BreakBefore@Process
2511       }%
2512       \FV@EscChars
2513       \expandafter\FV@BreakBefore@Process\FV@BreakBefore\FV@Undefined
2514       \endgroup
2515       \FV@BreakBefore@Def
2516       \FV@BreakBeforePrep@PygmentsHook
2517     \fi
2518   }

```

\FV@BreakAfterPrep@UTF

```

2518 \def\FV@BreakAfterPrep@UTF{%
2519   \ifx\FV@BreakAfter\@empty\relax
2520   \else
2521     \gdef\FV@BreakAfter@Def{%
2522       \begingroup
2523       \def\FV@BreakAfter@Process##1{%
2524         \ifcsname FV@U8:\detokenize{##1}\endcsname
2525         \expandafter\let\expandafter\FV@Break@Next\csname FV@U8:\detokenize{##1}\endcsname
2526         \let\FV@UTF@octets@after\FV@BreakAfter@Process@ii
2527         \else
2528           \ifx##1\FV@Undefined
2529             \let\FV@Break@Next\@gobble
2530           \else
2531             \let\FV@Break@Next\FV@BreakAfter@Process@i
2532           \fi
2533         \fi
2534         \FV@Break@Next##1%
2535       }%

```

```

2536 \def\FV@BreakAfter@Process@i##1{%
2537 \expandafter\FV@BreakAfter@Process@ii\expandafter{##1}}%
2538 \def\FV@BreakAfter@Process@ii##1{%
2539 \ifcsname FV@BreakBefore@Token\detokenize{##1}\endcsname
2540 \ifbool{FV@breakbeforeinrun}%
2541 {\ifbool{FV@breakafterinrun}%
2542 }%
2543 {\PackageError{fvextra}%
2544 {Conflicting breakbeforeinrun and breakafterinrun for "\detokenize{##1}}"%
2545 {Conflicting breakbeforeinrun and breakafterinrun for "\detokenize{##1}}}%
2546 {\ifbool{FV@breakafterinrun}%
2547 {\PackageError{fvextra}%
2548 {Conflicting breakbeforeinrun and breakafterinrun for "\detokenize{##1}}"%
2549 {Conflicting breakbeforeinrun and breakafterinrun for "\detokenize{##1}}}%
2550 }%
2551 \fi
2552 \g@addto@macro\FV@BreakAfter@Def{%
2553 \@namedef{FV@BreakAfter@Token\detokenize{##1}}{}}%
2554 \FV@BreakAfter@Process
2555 }%
2556 \FV@EscChars
2557 \expandafter\FV@BreakAfter@Process\FV@BreakAfter\FV@Undefined
2558 \endgroup
2559 \FV@BreakAfter@Def
2560 \FV@BreakAfterPrep@PygmentsHook
2561 \fi
2562 }

```

`\FV@Break@AnyToken@UTF` Instead of just adding each token to `\FV@BreakBuffer` with a preceding break, also check for multi-byte code points and capture the remaining bytes when they are encountered.

```

2563 \def\FV@Break@AnyToken@UTF#1{%
2564 \ifcsname FV@U8:\detokenize{#1}\endcsname
2565 \expandafter\let\expandafter\FV@Break@Next\csname FV@U8:\detokenize{#1}\endcsname
2566 \let\FV@UTF@octets@after\FV@Break@AnyToken@UTF@i
2567 \else
2568 \let\FV@Break@Next\FV@Break@AnyToken@UTF@i
2569 \fi
2570 \FV@Break@Next{#1}%
2571 }
2572 \def\FV@Break@AnyToken@UTF@i#1{%
2573 \def\FV@CurrentToken{#1}%
2574 \ifx\FV@CurrentToken\FV@ActiveSpaceToken\relax
2575 \expandafter\@firstoftwo
2576 \else
2577 \expandafter\@secondoftwo
2578 \fi
2579 {\let\FV@LastToken\FV@CurrentToken
2580 \FV@BreakBuffer@Append{#1}\FV@Break@Scan}%
2581 {\ifx\FV@LastToken\FV@ActiveSpaceToken
2582 \expandafter\@firstoftwo
2583 \else
2584 \expandafter\@secondoftwo
2585 \fi

```

```

2586     {\let\FV@LastToken\FV@CurrentToken
2587      \FV@BreakBuffer@Append{#1}\FV@Break@Scan}%
2588     {\let\FV@LastToken\FV@CurrentToken
2589      \FV@BreakBuffer@Append{\FancyVerbBreakAnywhereBreak#1}\FV@Break@Scan}}

```

`\FV@Break@BeforeAfterToken@UTF` Due to the way that the flow works, #1 will sometimes be a single byte and sometimes be a multi-byte UTF-8 code point. As a result, it is vital use use `\detokenize` in the UTF-8 leading byte checks; `\string` would only deal with the first byte. It is also important to keep track of the distinction between `\FV@Break@Next#1` and `\FV@Break@Next{#1}`. In some cases, a multi-byte sequence is being passed on as a single argument, so it must be enclosed in curly braces; in other cases, it is being re-inserted into the scanning stream and curly braces must be avoided lest they be interpreted as part of the original text.

```

2590 \def\FV@Break@BeforeAfterToken@UTF#1{%
2591   \ifcsname FV@U8:\detokenize{#1}\endcsname
2592     \expandafter\let\expandafter\FV@Break@Next\csname FV@U8:\detokenize{#1}\endcsname
2593     \let\FV@UTF@octets@after\FV@Break@BeforeAfterToken@UTF@i
2594   \else
2595     \let\FV@Break@Next\FV@Break@BeforeAfterToken@UTF@i
2596   \fi
2597   \FV@Break@Next{#1}%
2598 }
2599 \def\FV@Break@BeforeAfterToken@UTF@i#1{%
2600   \ifcsname FV@BreakBefore@Token\detokenize{#1}\endcsname
2601     \let\FV@Break@Next\FV@Break@BeforeTokenBreak@UTF
2602   \else
2603     \ifcsname FV@BreakAfter@Token\detokenize{#1}\endcsname
2604     \let\FV@Break@Next\FV@Break@AfterTokenBreak@UTF
2605   \else
2606     \let\FV@Break@Next\FV@Break@BeforeAfterTokenNoBreak@UTF
2607   \fi
2608   \fi
2609   \FV@Break@Next{#1}%
2610 }
2611 \def\FV@Break@BeforeAfterTokenNoBreak@UTF#1{%
2612   \FV@BreakBuffer@Append{#1}%
2613   \def\FV@LastToken{#1}%
2614   \FV@Break@Scan}
2615 \def\FV@Break@BeforeTokenBreak@UTF#1{%
2616   \def\FV@CurrentToken{#1}%
2617   \ifbool{FV@breakbeforeinrun}%
2618     {\ifcsname FV@BreakAfter@Token\detokenize{#1}\endcsname
2619      \ifx\FV@CurrentToken\FV@ActiveSpaceToken
2620        \FV@BreakBuffer@Append{\FancyVerbSpaceBreak}%
2621      \else
2622        \FV@BreakBuffer@Append{\FancyVerbBreakBeforeBreak}%
2623      \fi
2624      \let\FV@Break@Next\FV@Break@BeforeTokenBreak@AfterRescan@UTF
2625      \def\FV@RescanToken{#1}%
2626    \else
2627      \ifx\FV@CurrentToken\FV@ActiveSpaceToken
2628        \FV@BreakBuffer@Append{\FancyVerbSpaceBreak#1}%
2629      \else
2630        \FV@BreakBuffer@Append{\FancyVerbBreakBeforeBreak#1}%

```

```

2631     \fi
2632     \let\FV@Break@Next\FV@Break@Scan
2633     \def\FV@LastToken{#1}%
2634   \fi}%
2635 {\ifx\FV@CurrentToken\FV@LastToken\relax
2636   \ifcsname FV@BreakAfter@Token\detokenize{#1}\endcsname
2637     \let\FV@Break@Next\FV@Break@BeforeTokenBreak@AfterRescan@UTF
2638     \def\FV@RescanToken{#1}%
2639   \else
2640     \FV@BreakBuffer@Append{#1}%
2641     \let\FV@Break@Next\FV@Break@Scan
2642     \def\FV@LastToken{#1}%
2643   \fi
2644 \else
2645   \ifcsname FV@BreakAfter@Token\detokenize{#1}\endcsname
2646     \ifx\FV@CurrentToken\FV@ActiveSpaceToken
2647       \FV@BreakBuffer@Append{\FancyVerbSpaceBreak}%
2648     \else
2649       \FV@BreakBuffer@Append{\FancyVerbBreakBeforeBreak}%
2650     \fi
2651     \let\FV@Break@Next\FV@Break@BeforeTokenBreak@AfterRescan@UTF
2652     \def\FV@RescanToken{#1}%
2653   \else
2654     \ifx\FV@CurrentToken\FV@ActiveSpaceToken
2655       \FV@BreakBuffer@Append{\FancyVerbSpaceBreak#1}%
2656     \else
2657       \FV@BreakBuffer@Append{\FancyVerbBreakBeforeBreak#1}%
2658     \fi
2659     \let\FV@Break@Next\FV@Break@Scan
2660     \def\FV@LastToken{#1}%
2661   \fi
2662 \fi}%
2663 \FV@Break@Next}
2664 \def\FV@Break@BeforeTokenBreak@AfterRescan@UTF{%
2665   \expandafter\FV@Break@AfterTokenBreak@UTF\expandafter{\FV@RescanToken}}
2666 \def\FV@Break@AfterTokenBreak@UTF#1{%
2667   \def\FV@LastToken{#1}%
2668   \@ifnextchar\FV@FVSpaceToken%
2669   {\ifx\FV@LastToken\FV@ActiveSpaceToken
2670     \expandafter\@firstoftwo
2671   \else
2672     \expandafter\@secondoftwo
2673   \fi
2674   {\FV@Break@AfterTokenBreak@UTF@i{#1}}%
2675   {\FV@BreakBuffer@Append{#1}%
2676    \FV@Break@Scan}}%
2677   {\FV@Break@AfterTokenBreak@UTF@i{#1}}}
2678 \def\FV@Break@AfterTokenBreak@UTF@i#1{%
2679   \ifbool{FV@breakafterinrun}%
2680   {\ifx\FV@LastToken\FV@ActiveSpaceToken
2681     \FV@BreakBuffer@Append{#1\FancyVerbSpaceBreak}%
2682   \else
2683     \FV@BreakBuffer@Append{#1\FancyVerbBreakAfterBreak}%
2684   \fi

```

```

2685 \let\FV@Break@Next\FV@Break@Scan}%
2686 {\FV@BreakBuffer@Append{#1}%
2687 \expandafter\ifx\csname @let@token\endcsname\bgroup\relax
2688 \let\FV@Break@Next\FV@Break@AfterTokenBreak@Group@UTF
2689 \else
2690 \let\FV@Break@Next\FV@Break@AfterTokenBreak@UTF@ii
2691 \fi}%
2692 \FV@Break@Next}
2693 \def\FV@Break@AfterTokenBreak@UTF@ii#1{%
2694 \ifcsname FV@U8:\detokenize{#1}\endcsname
2695 \expandafter\let\expandafter\FV@Break@Next\csname FV@U8:\detokenize{#1}\endcsname
2696 \let\FV@UTF@octets@after\FV@Break@AfterTokenBreak@UTF@ii
2697 \else
2698 \def\FV@NextToken{#1}%
2699 \ifx\FV@LastToken\FV@NextToken
2700 \else
2701 \ifx\FV@LastToken\FV@ActiveSpaceToken
2702 \FV@BreakBuffer@Append{\FancyVerbSpaceBreak}%
2703 \else
2704 \FV@BreakBuffer@Append{\FancyVerbBreakAfterBreak}%
2705 \fi
2706 \fi
2707 \let\FV@Break@Next\FV@Break@Scan
2708 \fi
2709 \FV@Break@Next#1}
2710 \def\FV@Break@AfterTokenBreak@Group@UTF#1{%
2711 \ifstrempy{#1}%
2712 {\FV@BreakBuffer@Append{}}%
2713 \@ifnextchar\bgroup
2714 {\ifx\FV@LastToken\FV@ActiveSpaceToken
2715 \FV@BreakBuffer@Append{\FancyVerbSpaceBreak}%
2716 \else
2717 \FV@BreakBuffer@Append{\FancyVerbBreakAfterBreak}%
2718 \fi
2719 \FV@Break@Group}%
2720 {\FV@Break@AfterTokenBreak@Group@UTF@ii}}%
2721 {\ifx\FV@LastToken\FV@ActiveSpaceToken
2722 \FV@BreakBuffer@Append{\FancyVerbSpaceBreak}%
2723 \else
2724 \FV@BreakBuffer@Append{\FancyVerbBreakAfterBreak}%
2725 \fi
2726 \FV@Break@Group{#1}}}
2727 \def\FV@Break@AfterTokenBreak@Group@UTF@ii#1{%
2728 \ifcsname FV@U8:\detokenize{#1}\endcsname
2729 \expandafter\let\expandafter\FV@Break@Next\csname FV@U8:\detokenize{#1}\endcsname
2730 \let\FV@UTF@octets@after\FV@Break@AfterTokenBreak@Group@UTF@ii
2731 \else
2732 \def\FV@NextToken{#1}%
2733 \ifx\FV@LastToken\FV@NextToken
2734 \else
2735 \ifx\FV@LastToken\FV@ActiveSpaceToken
2736 \FV@BreakBuffer@Append{\FancyVerbSpaceBreak}%
2737 \else
2738 \FV@BreakBuffer@Append{\FancyVerbBreakAfterBreak}%

```

```

2739     \fi
2740     \fi
2741     \let\FV@Break@Next\FV@Break@Scan
2742     \fi
2743     \FV@Break@Next#1}

```

End the conditional creation of the pdfTeX UTF macros:

```
2744 \fi
```

Line processing before scanning

`\FV@makeLineNumber` The `lineno` package is used for formatting wrapped lines and inserting break symbols. We need a version of `lineno`'s `\makeLineNumber` that is adapted for our purposes. This is adapted directly from the example `\makeLineNumber` that is given in the `lineno` documentation under the discussion of internal line numbers. The `\FV@SetLineBreakLast` is needed to determine the internal line number of the last segment of the broken line, so that we can disable the right-hand break symbol on this segment. When a right-hand break symbol is in use, a line of code will be processed twice: once to determine the last internal line number, and once to use this information only to insert right-hand break symbols on the appropriate lines. During the second run, `\FV@SetLineBreakLast` is disabled by `\letting` it to `\relax`.

```

2745 \def\FV@makeLineNumber{%
2746   \hss
2747   \FancyVerbBreakSymbolLeftLogic{\FancyVerbBreakSymbolLeft}%
2748   \hbox to \FV@BreakSymbolSepLeft{\hfill}%
2749   \rlap{\hskip\linewidth
2750     \hbox to \FV@BreakSymbolSepRight{\hfill}%
2751     \FancyVerbBreakSymbolRightLogic{\FancyVerbBreakSymbolRight}%
2752     \FV@SetLineBreakLast
2753   }%
2754 }

```

`\FV@RaggedRight` We need a copy of the default `\raggedright` to ensure that everything works with classes or packages that use a special definition.

```

2755 \def\FV@RaggedRight{%
2756   \let\\@centercr
2757   \@rightskip\@flushglue\rightskip\@rightskip\leftskip\z@skip\parindent\z@}

```

`\FV@LineWidth` This is the effective line width within a broken line.

```
2758 \newdimen\FV@LineWidth
```

`\FV@SaveLineBox` This is the macro that does most of the work. It was inspired by Marco Daniel's code at <http://tex.stackexchange.com/a/112573/10742>.

This macro is invoked when a line is too long. We modify `\FV@LineWidth` to take into account `breakindent` and `breakautoindent`, and insert `\hboxes` to fill the empty space. We also account for `breaksymbolindentleft` and `breaksymbolindentright`, but *only* when there are actually break symbols. The code is placed in a `\parbox`. Break symbols are inserted via `lineno`'s `internallinenumbers*`, which does internal line numbers without continuity between environments (the `linenumber` counter is automatically reset). The

beginning of the line has negative `\hspace` inserted to pull it out to the correct starting position. `\struts` are used to maintain correct line heights. The `\parbox` is followed by an empty `\hbox` that takes up the space needed for a right-hand break symbol (if any). `\FV@BreakByTokenAnywhereHook` is a hook for using `breakbytokenanywhere` when working with Pygments. Since it is within `internallinenumbers*`, its effects do not escape.

```

2759 \def\FV@SaveLineBox#1{%
2760   \savebox{\FV@LineBox}{%
2761     \advance\FV@LineWidth by -\FV@BreakIndent
2762     \hbox to \FV@BreakIndent{\hfill}%
2763     \ifbool{FV@breakautoindent}%
2764       {\let\FV@LineIndentChars\@empty
2765         \FV@GetLineIndent#1\FV@Sentinel
2766         \savebox{\FV@LineIndentBox}{\FV@LineIndentChars}%
2767         \hbox to \wd\FV@LineIndentBox{\hfill}%
2768         \advance\FV@LineWidth by -\wd\FV@LineIndentBox
2769         \setcounter{FV@TrueTabCounter}{0}}%
2770     }%
2771     \ifdefempty{\FancyVerbBreakSymbolLeft}{}%
2772     {\hbox to \FV@BreakSymbolIndentLeft{\hfill}%
2773       \advance\FV@LineWidth by -\FV@BreakSymbolIndentLeft}%
2774     \ifdefempty{\FancyVerbBreakSymbolRight}{}%
2775     {\advance\FV@LineWidth by -\FV@BreakSymbolIndentRight}%
2776     \parbox[t]{\FV@LineWidth}{%
2777       \FV@RaggedRight
2778       \leftlinenumbers*
2779       \begin{internallinenumbers*}%
2780         \let\makeLineNumber\FV@makeLineNumber
2781         \noindent\hspace*{-\FV@BreakIndent}%
2782         \ifdefempty{\FancyVerbBreakSymbolLeft}{}{%
2783           \hspace*{-\FV@BreakSymbolIndentLeft}}%
2784         \ifbool{FV@breakautoindent}%
2785         {\hspace*{-\wd\FV@LineIndentBox}}%
2786         }%
2787         \FV@BreakByTokenAnywhereHook
2788         \strut\FV@InsertBreaks{\FancyVerbFormatText}{#1}\nobreak\strut
2789       \end{internallinenumbers*}
2790     }%
2791     \ifdefempty{\FancyVerbBreakSymbolRight}{}%
2792     {\hbox to \FV@BreakSymbolIndentRight{\hfill}}%
2793   }%
2794 }
2795 \let\FV@BreakByTokenAnywhereHook\relax

```

`\FV@ListProcessLine@Break` This macro is based on the original `\FV@ListProcessLine` and follows it as closely as possible. `\FV@LineWidth` is reduced by `\FV@FrameSep` and `\FV@FrameRule` so that text will not overrun frames. This is done conditionally based on which frames are in use. We save the current line in a box, and only do special things if the box is too wide. For uniformity, all text is placed in a `\parbox`, even if it doesn't need to be wrapped.

If a line is too wide, then it is passed to `\FV@SaveLineBox`. If there is no right-hand break symbol, then the saved result in `\FV@LineBox` may be used immediately. If there is a right-hand break symbol, then the line must be processed

a second time, so that the right-hand break symbol may be removed from the final segment of the broken line (since it does not continue). During the first use of `\FV@SaveLineBox`, the counter `FancyVerbLineBreakLast` is set to the internal line number of the last segment of the broken line. During the second use of `\FV@SaveLineBox`, we disable this (`\let\FV@SetLineBreakLast\relax`) so that the value of `FancyVerbLineBreakLast` remains fixed and thus may be used to determine when a right-hand break symbol should be inserted.

```

2796 \def\FV@ListProcessLine@Break#1{%
2797   \hbox to \hsize{%
2798     \kern\leftmargin
2799     \hbox to \linewidth{%
2800       \FV@LineWidth\linewidth
2801       \ifx\FV@RightListFrame\relax\else
2802         \advance\FV@LineWidth by -\FV@FrameSep
2803         \advance\FV@LineWidth by -\FV@FrameRule
2804       \fi
2805       \ifx\FV@LeftListFrame\relax\else
2806         \advance\FV@LineWidth by -\FV@FrameSep
2807         \advance\FV@LineWidth by -\FV@FrameRule
2808       \fi
2809       \ifx\FV@Tab\FV@TrueTab
2810         \let\FV@TrueTabSaveWidth\FV@TrueTabSaveWidth@Save
2811         \setcounter{FV@TrueTabCounter}{0}%
2812       \fi
2813       \sbox{\FV@LineBox}{%
2814         \let\FancyVerbBreakStart\relax
2815         \let\FancyVerbBreakStop\relax
2816         \FancyVerbFormatLine{%
2817           %\FancyVerbHighlightLine %<-- Default definition using \rlap breaks breaking
2818           {\FV@ObeyTabs{\FancyVerbFormatText{#1}}}}}%
2819       \ifx\FV@Tab\FV@TrueTab
2820         \let\FV@TrueTabSaveWidth\relax
2821       \fi
2822       \ifdim\wd\FV@LineBox>\FV@LineWidth
2823         \setcounter{FancyVerbLineBreakLast}{0}%
2824         \ifx\FV@Tab\FV@TrueTab
2825           \let\FV@Tab\FV@TrueTab@UseWidth
2826           \setcounter{FV@TrueTabCounter}{0}%
2827         \fi
2828         \FV@SaveLineBox{#1}%
2829         \ifdefempty{\FancyVerbBreakSymbolRight}{}{%
2830           \let\FV@SetLineBreakLast\relax
2831           \setcounter{FV@TrueTabCounter}{0}%
2832           \FV@SaveLineBox{#1}}}%
2833         \FV@LeftListNumber
2834         \FV@LeftListFrame
2835         \FancyVerbFormatLine{%
2836           \FancyVerbHighlightLine{\usebox{\FV@LineBox}}}%
2837         \FV@RightListFrame
2838         \FV@RightListNumber
2839         \ifx\FV@Tab\FV@TrueTab@UseWidth
2840           \let\FV@Tab\FV@TrueTab
2841       \fi

```

```

2842 \else
2843   \let\FancyVerbBreakStart\relax
2844   \let\FancyVerbBreakStop\relax
2845   \FV@LeftListNumber
2846   \FV@LeftListFrame
2847   \FancyVerbFormatLine{%
2848     \FancyVerbHighlightLine{%
2849       \parbox[t]{\FV@LineWidth}{%
2850         \noindent\strut\FV@ObeyTabs{\FancyVerbFormatText{#1}}\strut}}}%
2851   \FV@RightListFrame
2852   \FV@RightListNumber
2853 \fi}%
2854 \hss}\baselineskip\z@\lineskip\z@}

```

12.13 Pygments compatibility

This section makes line breaking compatible with [Pygments](#), which is used by several packages including `minted` and `pythontex` for syntax highlighting. A few additional line breaking options are also defined for working with Pygments.

`\FV@BreakBeforePrep@Pygments` Pygments converts some characters into macros to ensure that they appear literally. As a result, `breakbefore` and `breakafter` would fail for these characters. This macro checks for the existence of breaking macros for these characters, and creates breaking macros for the corresponding Pygments character macros as necessary.

The argument that the macro receives is the detokenized name of the main Pygments macro, with the trailing space that detokenization produces stripped. All macro names must end with a space, because the breaking algorithm uses detokenization on each token when checking for breaking macros, and this will produce a trailing space.

```

2855 \def\FV@BreakBeforePrep@Pygments#1{%
2856   \ifcsname FV@BreakBefore@Token\@backslashchar\endcsname
2857     \@namedef{FV@BreakBefore@Token#1Zbs }{ }%
2858   \fi
2859   \ifcsname FV@BreakBefore@Token\FV@underscorechar\endcsname
2860     \@namedef{FV@BreakBefore@Token#1Zus }{ }%
2861   \fi
2862   \ifcsname FV@BreakBefore@Token\@charlb\endcsname
2863     \@namedef{FV@BreakBefore@Token#1Zob }{ }%
2864   \fi
2865   \ifcsname FV@BreakBefore@Token\@charrb\endcsname
2866     \@namedef{FV@BreakBefore@Token#1Zcb }{ }%
2867   \fi
2868   \ifcsname FV@BreakBefore@Token\detokenize{^}\endcsname
2869     \@namedef{FV@BreakBefore@Token#1Zca }{ }%
2870   \fi
2871   \ifcsname FV@BreakBefore@Token\FV@ampchar\endcsname
2872     \@namedef{FV@BreakBefore@Token#1Zam }{ }%
2873   \fi
2874   \ifcsname FV@BreakBefore@Token\detokenize{<}\endcsname
2875     \@namedef{FV@BreakBefore@Token#1Zlt }{ }%
2876   \fi
2877   \ifcsname FV@BreakBefore@Token\detokenize{>}\endcsname
2878     \@namedef{FV@BreakBefore@Token#1Zgt }{ }%

```

```

2879 \fi
2880 \ifcsname FV@BreakBefore@Token\FV@hashchar\endcsname
2881 \namedef{FV@BreakBefore@Token#1Zsh }-{}%
2882 \fi
2883 \ifcsname FV@BreakBefore@Token\@percentchar\endcsname
2884 \namedef{FV@BreakBefore@Token#1Zpc }-{}%
2885 \fi
2886 \ifcsname FV@BreakBefore@Token\FV@dollarchar\endcsname
2887 \namedef{FV@BreakBefore@Token#1Zdl }-{}%
2888 \fi
2889 \ifcsname FV@BreakBefore@Token\detokenize{-}\endcsname
2890 \namedef{FV@BreakBefore@Token#1Zhy }-{}%
2891 \fi
2892 \ifcsname FV@BreakBefore@Token\detokenize{'}\endcsname
2893 \namedef{FV@BreakBefore@Token#1Zsq }-{}%
2894 \fi
2895 \ifcsname FV@BreakBefore@Token\detokenize{"}\endcsname
2896 \namedef{FV@BreakBefore@Token#1Zdq }-{}%
2897 \fi
2898 \ifcsname FV@BreakBefore@Token\FV@tildechar\endcsname
2899 \namedef{FV@BreakBefore@Token#1Zti }-{}%
2900 \fi
2901 \ifcsname FV@BreakBefore@Token\detokenize{@}\endcsname
2902 \namedef{FV@BreakBefore@Token#1Zat }-{}%
2903 \fi
2904 \ifcsname FV@BreakBefore@Token\detokenize{[]}\endcsname
2905 \namedef{FV@BreakBefore@Token#1Zlb }-{}%
2906 \fi
2907 \ifcsname FV@BreakBefore@Token\detokenize{[]}\endcsname
2908 \namedef{FV@BreakBefore@Token#1Zrb }-{}%
2909 \fi
2910 }

```

\FV@BreakAfterPrep@Pygments

```

2911 \def\FV@BreakAfterPrep@Pygments#1{%
2912 \ifcsname FV@BreakAfter@Token\@backslashchar\endcsname
2913 \namedef{FV@BreakAfter@Token#1Zbs }-{}%
2914 \fi
2915 \ifcsname FV@BreakAfter@Token\FV@underscorechar\endcsname
2916 \namedef{FV@BreakAfter@Token#1Zus }-{}%
2917 \fi
2918 \ifcsname FV@BreakAfter@Token\@charlb\endcsname
2919 \namedef{FV@BreakAfter@Token#1Zob }-{}%
2920 \fi
2921 \ifcsname FV@BreakAfter@Token\@charrb\endcsname
2922 \namedef{FV@BreakAfter@Token#1Zcb }-{}%
2923 \fi
2924 \ifcsname FV@BreakAfter@Token\detokenize{^}\endcsname
2925 \namedef{FV@BreakAfter@Token#1Zca }-{}%
2926 \fi
2927 \ifcsname FV@BreakAfter@Token\FV@ampchar\endcsname
2928 \namedef{FV@BreakAfter@Token#1Zam }-{}%
2929 \fi
2930 \ifcsname FV@BreakAfter@Token\detokenize{<}\endcsname

```

```

2931 \namedef{FV@BreakAfter@Token#1Zlt }{ }%
2932 \fi
2933 \ifcsname FV@BreakAfter@Token\detokenize{>}\endcsname
2934 \namedef{FV@BreakAfter@Token#1Zgt }{ }%
2935 \fi
2936 \ifcsname FV@BreakAfter@Token\FV@hashchar\endcsname
2937 \namedef{FV@BreakAfter@Token#1Zsh }{ }%
2938 \fi
2939 \ifcsname FV@BreakAfter@Token\@percentchar\endcsname
2940 \namedef{FV@BreakAfter@Token#1Zpc }{ }%
2941 \fi
2942 \ifcsname FV@BreakAfter@Token\FV@dollarchar\endcsname
2943 \namedef{FV@BreakAfter@Token#1Zdl }{ }%
2944 \fi
2945 \ifcsname FV@BreakAfter@Token\detokenize{-}\endcsname
2946 \namedef{FV@BreakAfter@Token#1Zhy }{ }%
2947 \fi
2948 \ifcsname FV@BreakAfter@Token\detokenize{'}\endcsname
2949 \namedef{FV@BreakAfter@Token#1Zsq }{ }%
2950 \fi
2951 \ifcsname FV@BreakAfter@Token\detokenize{"}\endcsname
2952 \namedef{FV@BreakAfter@Token#1Zdq }{ }%
2953 \fi
2954 \ifcsname FV@BreakAfter@Token\FV@tildechar\endcsname
2955 \namedef{FV@BreakAfter@Token#1Zti }{ }%
2956 \fi
2957 \ifcsname FV@BreakAfter@Token\detokenize{@}\endcsname
2958 \namedef{FV@BreakAfter@Token#1Zat }{ }%
2959 \fi
2960 \ifcsname FV@BreakAfter@Token\detokenize{[}\endcsname
2961 \namedef{FV@BreakAfter@Token#1Zlb }{ }%
2962 \fi
2963 \ifcsname FV@BreakAfter@Token\detokenize{]}\endcsname
2964 \namedef{FV@BreakAfter@Token#1Zrb }{ }%
2965 \fi
2966 }

```

breakbytoken When Pygments is used, do not allow breaks within *Pygments tokens*. So, for example, breaks would not be allowed within a string, but could occur before or after it. This has no affect when Pygments is not in use, and is only intended for minted, pythontex, and similar packages.

```

2967 \newbool{FV@breakbytoken}
2968 \define@booleankey{FV}{breakbytoken}%
2969 {\booltrue{FV@breakbytoken}}%
2970 {\boolfalse{FV@breakbytoken}\boolfalse{FV@breakbytokenanywhere}}

```

breakbytokenanywhere **breakbytoken** prevents breaks *within* tokens. Breaks outside of tokens may still occur at spaces. This option also enables breaks between immediately adjacent tokens that are not separated by spaces. Its definition is tied in with **breakbytoken** so that **breakbytoken** may be used as a check for whether either option is in use; essentially, **breakbytokenanywhere** is treated as a special case of **breakbytoken**.

```

2971 \newbool{FV@breakbytokenanywhere}
2972 \define@booleankey{FV}{breakbytokenanywhere}%

```

```

2973 {\booltrue{FV@breakbytokenanywhere}\booltrue{FV@breakbytoken}}%
2974 {\boolfalse{FV@breakbytokenanywhere}\boolfalse{FV@breakbytoken}}

```

`\VerbBreakByTokenAnywhereBreak` This is the break introduced when `breakbytokenanywhere=true`. Alternatives would be `\discretionary{}{}{} or \linebreak[0]`.

```

2975 \def\FancyVerbBreakByTokenAnywhereBreak{\allowbreak{}}

```

`\VerbatimPygments` This is the command that activates Pygments features. It must be invoked before `\begin{Verbatim}`, etc., but inside a `\begingroup... \endgroup` so that its effects do not escape into the rest of the document (for example, within the beginning of an environment. It takes two arguments: The Pygments macro that literally appears (`\PYG` for `minted` and `pythontex`), and the Pygments macro that should actually be used (`\PYG<style_name>` for `minted` and `pythontex`). The two are distinguished because it can be convenient to highlight everything using the same literal macro name, and then `\let` it to appropriate values to change styles, rather than redoing all highlighting to change styles. It modifies `\FV@PygmentsHook`, which is at the beginning of `\FV@FormattingPrep@PreHook`, to make the actual changes at the appropriate time.

```

2976 \def\VerbatimPygments#1#2{%
2977   \def\FV@PygmentsHook{\FV@VerbatimPygments{#1}{#2}}

```

`\FV@VerbatimPygments` This does all the actual work. Again, `#1` is the Pygments macro that literally appears, and `#2` is the macro that is actually to be used.

The `breakbefore` and `breakafter` hooks are redefined. This requires some trickery to get the detokenized name of the main Pygments macro without the trailing space that detokenization of a macro name produces.

In the non-`breakbytoken` case, `#1` is redefined to use `#2` internally, bringing in `\FancyVerbBreakStart` and `\FancyVerbBreakStop` to allow line breaks.

In the `breakbytoken` cases, an `\hbox` is used to prevent breaks within the macro (breaks could occur at spaces even without `\FancyVerbBreakStart`). The `breakbytokenanywhere` case is similar but a little tricky. `\FV@BreakByTokenAnywhereHook`, which is inside `\FV@SaveLineBox` where line breaking occurs, is used to define `\FV@BreakByTokenAnywhereBreak` so that it will “do nothing” the first time it is used and on subsequent invocations become `\FancyVerbBreakByTokenAnywhereBreak`. Because the hook is within the `internallinenumbers*` environment, the redefinition doesn’t escape, and the default global definition of `\FV@BreakByTokenAnywhereBreak` as `\relax` is not affected. We don’t want the actual break to appear before the first Pygments macro in case it might cause a spurious break after leading whitespace. But we must have breaks *before* Pygments macros because otherwise lookahead would be necessary.

An intermediate variable `\FV@PYG` is defined to avoid problems in case `#1=#2`. There is also a check for a non-existent `#2` (`\PYG<style_name>` may not be created until a later compile in the `pythontex` case); if `#2` does not exist, fall back to `#1`. For the existence check, `\ifx... \relax` must be used instead of `\ifcsname`, because `#2` will be a macro, and will typically be created with `\csname... \endcsname` which will `\let` the macro to `\relax` if it doesn’t already exist.

`\FV@PYG@Redefed` is `\let` to the Pygments macro that appears literally (after redefinition), so that it can be detected elsewhere to allow for special processing, such as in `breakautoindent`.

```

2978 \def\FV@VerbatimPygments#1#2{%

```

```

2979 \edef\FV@PYG@Literal{\expandafter\FV@DetokMacro@StripSpace\detokenize{#1}}%
2980 \def\FV@BreakBeforePrep@PygmentsHook{%
2981   \expandafter\FV@BreakBeforePrep@Pygments\expandafter{\FV@PYG@Literal}}%
2982 \def\FV@BreakAfterPrep@PygmentsHook{%
2983   \expandafter\FV@BreakAfterPrep@Pygments\expandafter{\FV@PYG@Literal}}%
2984 \ifx#2\relax
2985   \let\FV@PYG=#1\relax
2986 \else
2987   \let\FV@PYG=#2\relax
2988 \fi
2989 \ifbool{FV@breakbytoken}%
2990   {\ifbool{FV@breakbytokenanywhere}%
2991     {\def\FV@BreakByTokenAnywhereHook{%
2992       \def\FV@BreakByTokenAnywhereBreak{%
2993         \let\FV@BreakByTokenAnywhereBreak\FancyVerbBreakByTokenAnywhereBreak}}%
2994       \def#1##1##2{%
2995         \FV@BreakByTokenAnywhereBreak
2996         \leavevmode\hbox{\FV@PYG{##1}{##2}}}}%
2997     {\def#1##1##2{%
2998       \leavevmode\hbox{\FV@PYG{##1}{##2}}}}}%
2999   {\def#1##1##2{%
3000     \FV@PYG{##1}{\FancyVerbBreakStart##2\FancyVerbBreakStop}}}%
3001   \let\FV@PYG@Redefed=#1\relax
3002 }
3003 \let\FV@BreakByTokenAnywhereBreak\relax
3004 \def\FV@DetokMacro@StripSpace#1 {#1}

```